



**MINISTRY OF BUSINESS,
INNOVATION & EMPLOYMENT**
HĪKINA WHAKATUTUKI

New Zealand Building Code Handbook



Enquiries about the content of this document should be directed to:



**MINISTRY OF BUSINESS,
INNOVATION & EMPLOYMENT**
HIKINA WHAKATUTUKI

Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment
PO Box 1473, Wellington.
Telephone 0800 242 243
Fax 04 494 0290
Email: info@dbh.govt.nz

**Verification Methods and Acceptable Solutions
are available from www.dbh.govt.nz**

New Zealand Government

© Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment 2014

This document is protected by Crown copyright, unless indicated otherwise. The Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment administers the copyright in this document. You may use and reproduce this document for your personal use or for the purposes of your business provided you reproduce the document accurately and not in an inappropriate or misleading context. You may not distribute this document to others or reproduce it for sale or profit.

The Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment owns or has licences to use all images and trademarks in this document. You must not use or reproduce images and trademarks featured in this document for any purpose (except as part of an accurate reproduction of this document) unless you first obtain the written permission of the Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment.

Document Status

The most recent version of this document (Amendment 13), as detailed in the Document History, is approved by the Chief Executive of the Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment. It is effective from 14 February 2014 and supersedes all previous versions of this document.

The previous version of this document (Amendment 12) will cease to have effect on 14 August 2014.

People using this document should check for amendments on a regular basis. The Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment may amend any part of this handbook at any time. Up-to-date versions of this handbook are available from www.dbh.govt.nz

Handbook: Document History		
	Date	Alterations
First published	July 1992	
Third edition	25 May 2007	
Amendment 11	Published 31 July 2010 Effective 30 September 2010	pp. 6–8, 11 Preface pp. 17–78, Code Clauses – amended and reformatted pp. 79–104A, References – amended and reprinted pp. 105–148f, Definitions – amended and reprinted pp. 150–158, 161–164, 168–170, 172, 176–178, 181, 184–185 187, 189, 191, 193, 196–199, 201, 204–208, Index
Amendment 12	Effective from 10 October 2011 until 14 August 2014	p. 6, Preface pp. 80–100, 102–104A, References pp. 108, 113 –115, 119–120, 122, 125 128, 136, 138, 144, 146–147, 148d–f, Definitions pp. 149–208, Index
Amendment 13	14 February 2014	p. 2A, Document history status pp. 3–16, Preface pp. 17, 22–22B, 27–33C, 58 Code Clause Contents, A3, C1–C6, F8 pp. 79–104B, References pp. 105–148h, Definitions pp. 151–204 Index
Note: Page numbers relate to the document at the time of Amendment and may not match page numbers in current document.		

Preface

1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.1 This preface provides an introduction to building controls in New Zealand. This section shows the relationship between the New Zealand Building Code (the Building Code) and various other Provisions that ensure buildings in New Zealand are safe and healthy to use.

1.2 The preface provides a convenient user reference. However, legal interpretation must be based on the actual wording of the Building Act 2004 (the Building Act), and amendments and respective Building Regulations.

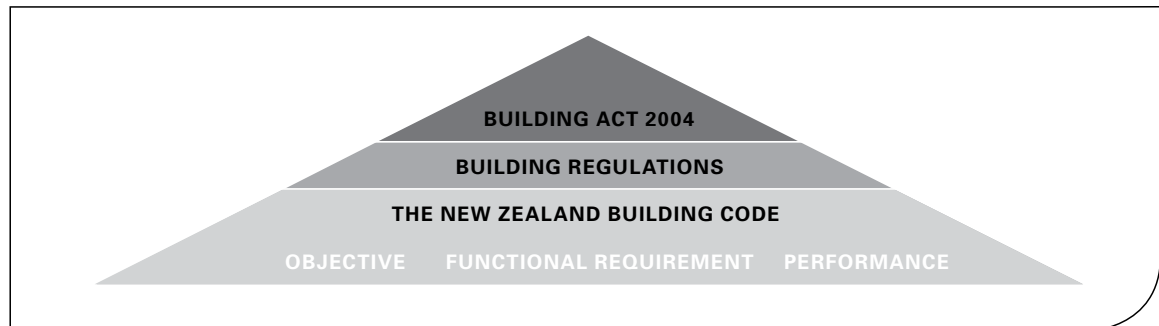
2.0 BUILDING CONTROL FRAMEWORK

The regulation and performance of buildings sits under the following three-part framework.

- The **Building Act**, which contains the provisions for regulating building work.
- The various **Building Regulations**, which contain prescribed forms, list specified systems, define 'change the use' and 'moderate earthquake', and set out the rate of levy and fees for determinations.
- The **Building Code**, contained in Schedule 1 of the Building Regulations 1992, which sets performance standards all new building work must meet, and covers aspects such as stability, protection from fire, access, moisture, safety of users, services and facilities, and energy efficiency.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

The pyramid below illustrates the legislation that forms the building control framework governed by the Building Act.



2.1 The Building Act 2004

The Building Act provides the mandatory framework for the building control system to be followed when undertaking building work in New Zealand. It applies to all:

- buildings including Crown buildings, except those which may be exempt for reasons of national security
- components in a building, including plumbing, electrical and mechanical installations.

The Building Act should be read taking into account the changes under the Building Amendment Act 2005 and any subsequent amendments (copies are on www.legislation.govt.nz).

2.1.1 Purpose

The Building Act aims to improve control of and encourage better practices in building design and construction to provide greater assurance to consumers.

This means:

- more clarity on the standards we expect buildings to meet
- more guidance on how these standards can be met
- more certainty that capable people are undertaking building design, construction and inspection
- more scrutiny in the building consent and inspection process
- better protection for homeowners through the introduction of mandatory warranties.

The purpose of the Building Act is:

- to provide for regulation of building work
- to ensure that people can use buildings safely without endangering their health
- to ensure people can escape a building in case of fire
- to ensure buildings have attributes that contribute appropriately to the health, physical independence and wellbeing of the people who use them

- to ensure buildings are designed, constructed and able to be used in ways that promote sustainable development.

2.1.2 Principles

The Building Act does not contain an equivalent to section 47 of the Building Act 1991 (the former Act), which contained guidance on how a territorial authority should exercise its powers.

Under section 4 of the Building Act (section 6 under the former Act), principles to be applied in performing functions or duties, or exercising powers under the Building Act, now have greater importance. Section 4 should be taken into account when performing functions, duties or exercising powers relating to the granting of waivers or modifications of the Building Code, and the adoption and review of policies on dangerous, earthquake-prone or insanitary buildings.

The Building Act re-states many of the principles outlined in the former Act, and makes explicit some of the implied principles of that legislation (for example, that innovation is important). However, some significant new concepts have been introduced, including a particular focus on the household unit, as well as considering the whole-of-life costs of building work.

The following is a summary of the Building Act principles.

- Household units have an important role in the lives of the people who use them, and are accorded a special focus.
- The Building Code as it relates to household units is important, and household units need to comply with the Building Code.
- Maintenance requirements of household units need to be reasonable, and owners of household units need to be aware of the maintenance requirements of their household units.
- Harmful effects on human health resulting from the use of building methods, products, design or building work need to be prevented or minimised.

- Buildings need to be durable.
- Special traditional and cultural aspects of the intended use of a building need to be recognised.
- The whole-of-life costs of a building need to be considered.
- Standards are important in achieving compliance with the Building Code for building design and construction.
- Innovation in methods of building design and construction is important.
- People who undertake a rescue operation or firefighting in a building need to be able to expect a reasonable level of protection from injury or illness while doing so.
- The extent and effects of the spread of fire need to be limited to protect other household units and other property.
- Other property needs to be protected from physical damage resulting from the construction, use and demolition of a building.
- People with disabilities need to be able to enter and carry out normal activities and processes in a building.
- Buildings of significant cultural, historical or heritage value need to be preserved.
- Energy use in buildings needs to be efficient.
- The use of renewable sources of energy needs to be encouraged.
- Material use in buildings needs to be efficient and sustainable.
- Water use in buildings needs to be efficient and promote water conservation.
- Waste generated during the construction process needs to be reduced.
- Owners, designers, builders and building consent authorities each need to be accountable for their role in obtaining consents and approvals, ensuring plans and specifications for building work will meet the Building Code, and ensuring work complies with the building consent or, where a building consent is not required, complies with the Building Code.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

2.1.3 Application

The Building Act applies to:

- building construction, alteration, demolition or removal
- maintenance of a building's specified systems, such as lifts and fire protection installations.

The Building Act does not cover:

- planning and resource management
- occupational safety and health.

2.1.4 Structure

The Building Act has five parts.

Part 1: Contains the purpose and principles of the Building Act, together with an overview, commencement dates for various Provisions and definitions. These sections provide an important reference when reading and interpreting the Building Act.

Part 2 (and Schedules 1 and 2): Outlines matters relating to the Building Code and building control (such as building consents), including requirements of building work, requirements for the use of buildings, Provisions for certain categories of buildings and Provisions for the safety of dams.

Part 3: Sets out the functions, duties and powers of the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing (the Department), territorial authorities, regional authorities and building consent authorities. It also deals with the accreditation and registration of building consent authorities, accreditation of dam owners, and product certification.

Part 4 (and Schedule 3): Covers matters relating to the licensing and disciplining of building practitioners.

Part 5 (and Schedule 4): Describes miscellaneous matters, including offences and criminal proceedings, implied terms of contracts, regulation-making powers, amendments to other enactments and the repeal of the former Act, and the transitional Provisions from the former Act to the Building Act.

2.2 Building Regulations

Building Regulations are made under and in accordance with the Building Act.

A number of regulations have been made under the Building Act. Currently (as at May 2007) there are seven sets of regulations.

1. **Building Regulations 1992**, made under the former Act and which include the Building Code. These regulations have been amended by the Building (Forms) Regulations 2004 so that only certain parts remain in force. Parts still in force are: Schedule 1 (Building Code), Regulation 3, Forms 16 & 17 (and Regulation 4 and Schedule 2 where they relate to these forms).
2. **Building (Forms) Regulations 2004**, as amended by the Building (Forms) Amendment Regulations 2005, which prescribes forms to be used under the Building Act.
3. **Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-prone Buildings) Regulations 2005**, as amended by the Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-Prone Buildings) Amendment Regulations 2005. These regulations outline and define the following terms.
 - Specified systems – the building systems that must be listed on compliance schedules and are subject to specific inspection and maintenance procedures. Schedule 1 provides the list of specified systems.
 - Change the use – to determine when a change in a building’s use will require upgrading to meet certain requirements of the Building Act. Schedule 2 determines the use of all or parts of buildings.
 - Moderate earthquake – to define a moderate earthquake in relation to a building.
4. **Building (Fee for Determinations) Regulations 2005**
5. **Building Levy Order 2005**
6. **Building (Accreditation of Building Consent Authorities) Regulations 2006**
7. **Building (Consent Authority Accreditation Fees) Regulations 2007**
8. **Building (Designation of Building work Licence Classes) Order 2007**
9. **Building (Design Work Declared to be Building Work) Order 2007**
10. **Building Practitioners (Licensing Fees and Levy) Regulations 2007**
11. **Building (Registration of Building Consent Authorities) Regulations 2007**
12. **Building (Infringement Offences, Fees, and Forms) Regulations 2007**
13. **Building Practitioners (Register of Licensed Building Practitioners) Regulations 2008**
14. **Building (Dam Safety) Regulations 2008**
15. **Building Practitioners (Complaints and Disciplinary Procedures) Regulations 2008**
16. **Building (Product Certification) Regulations 2008**
17. **Building (Building Consent Authority Transition) Order 2008**
18. **Building (National Multiple-use Approval) Regulations 2009**
19. **Building (Minor Variations) Regulations 2009**
20. **Building (Designation of Building Work Licensing Classes) Order 2010**
21. **Building Practitioners (Licensing Fees and Levy) Regulations 2010**
22. **Building Practitioners (Register of Licensed Building Practitioners) Regulations 2010**
23. **Canterbury Earthquake (Building Act)) Order 2010**
24. **Building (National Multiple-use Approval) Regulations 2011**
25. **Building (Definition of Restricted Building Work) Order 2011**
26. **Canterbury Earthquake (Building Act) Order 2013.**

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Note: these regulations can be found at www.legislation.govt.nz

2.3 The New Zealand Building Code

The Building Code is contained in Schedule 1 of the Building Regulations 1992. The Building Code contains compulsory rules for all new building work.

2.3.1 Content

The Building Code sets out performance criteria that building work must meet. It covers aspects such as structural stability, fire safety, access, moisture control, durability, services and facilities, and energy efficiency.

The Building Code does not prescribe how work should be done, but states how completed building work and its parts must perform.

An advantage of a performance-based Building Code is flexibility. It contains no prescriptive requirements stipulating that certain products or designs must be used. This flexibility allows developments and innovation in building design, technology and systems.

2.3.2 Structure

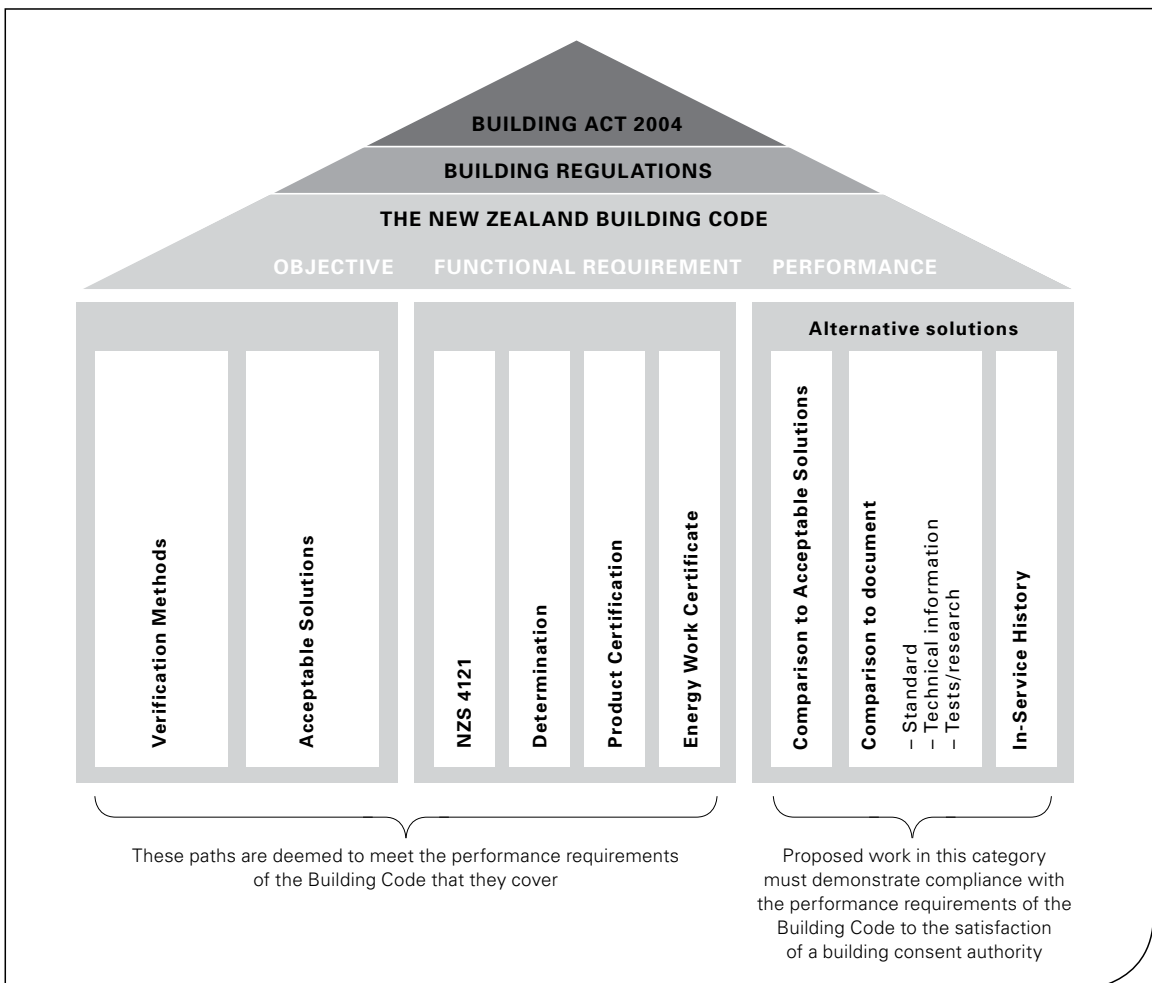
The Building Code consists of two preliminary clauses and 37 technical clauses. Each technical clause has three levels that describe the requirements for the clause and is listed below.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

1. **Objective** Social objectives the building must achieve.
2. **Functional requirement** Functions the building must perform to meet the Objective.
3. **Performance** The performance criteria the building must achieve. By meeting the performance criteria, the Objective and Functional requirement can be achieved.

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Amend 13
Feb 2014



Amend 13
Feb 2014

3.0 COMPLIANCE PATHS

Compliance with the Building Code can be demonstrated using various pathways. Understanding the New Zealand building control framework will help a building consent applicant decide which path is most suitable when designing and constructing building work.

The diagram below illustrates the hierarchy of New Zealand building controls, including the various compliance paths.

The top three tiers of the pyramid (the Building Act and Building Regulations) show mandatory building legislation that must be followed, as explained in the previous section.

The rest of the diagram shows various paths that may be used to demonstrate compliance with the Building Code. Compliance with the Building Code must be demonstrated using one or more of the paths. The applicant can choose which path(s) to follow.

With the exception of **alternative solutions**, the paths illustrated on the previous page must be accepted by the building consent authority as meeting the performance requirements of the Building Code. These pathways are discussed below.

3.1 Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods

Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods provide details for construction that, if followed, result in compliance with the Building Code. They are published by the Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment.

A design that complies with an Acceptable Solution or Verification Method must be accepted by a building consent authority as complying with the Building Code.

There is at least one Acceptable Solution or Verification Method for compliance with each of the Building Code clauses.

For example, for Clause B1 of the Building Code there are two Verification Methods and three Acceptable Solutions.

Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods are usually referred to by their Building Code clauses and unique identification numbers. Some examples are listed below.

- The Acceptable Solutions for Clause E2 **External Moisture** are known as **E2/AS1**, **E2/AS2** and **E2/AS3**.
- The Acceptable Solution for Clause G4 **Ventilation** is known as **G4/AS1**.
- The Acceptable Solution for Clause G1 **Personal Hygiene** is known as **G1/AS1**.
- The Verification Methods for Clause B1 **Structure** are known as **B1/VM1** and **B1/VM4**.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend 11
Sep 2010
Amend 12
Oct 2011

Amend 11
Sep 2010

3.1.1 Verification Methods

Verification Methods are tests or calculation methods that prescribe one way to comply with the Building Code. Verification Methods can include:

- calculation methods: using recognised analytical methods and mathematical models
- laboratory tests: using tests (sometimes to destruction) on prototype components and systems
- tests-in-situ: which may involve examination of plans and verification by test, where compliance with specified numbers, dimensions or locations is required (non-destructive tests, such as pipe pressure tests, are also included).

3.1.2 Acceptable Solutions

These are simple step-by-step instructions that show one way to comply with the Building Code.

3.2 Product certification

The Building Act contains provisions for a voluntary product certification scheme that will enable product manufacturers to have their products certified as meeting nominated Performance requirements of the Building Code.

Building products or methods that are used in accordance with a product certificate as provided by section 269 of the Building Act must be accepted as complying with the Building Code.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

3.3 Energy work certificate

Energy work is defined as gasfitting work or prescribed electrical work. An energy work certificate certifies that energy work complies with either the Electricity Act 1992 or the Gas Act 1992.

An energy work certificate must be accepted as establishing compliance with the relevant Performance requirements of the Building Code.

3.4 New Zealand Standard NZS 4121

Section 119 of the Building Act specifies that NZS 4121, the code of practice for design for access and use of buildings by persons with disabilities (and any modification of that Standard), is to be taken as an Acceptable Solution.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

3.5 Determinations

A determination is a binding decision made by the Department. It provides a way of solving disputes or answering questions relating to the Building Code and territorial authority/building consent authority/regional authority decisions under the Building Act.

A range of matters can be determined, including:

- whether a building or building work complies with the Building Code
- a building consent authority's decision on a building consent, a notice to fix, a code compliance certificate (CCC) or a compliance schedule
- a territorial authority's decision to issue a building consent subject to a waiver or modification
- a territorial authority's decision on a certificate of acceptance, a compliance schedule, a notice to fix, or a certificate for public use
- a regional authority's or territorial authority's exercise or failure to exercise its powers under the Building Act.

3.6 Alternative solutions

An alternative solution is a building solution that differs, in part or wholly, from the solutions

offered by the Acceptable Solution or Verification Method, but achieves compliance with the performance requirements of the Building Code to the satisfaction of the building consent authority.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

There may be a number of reasons for the use of an alternative solution.

- There may not be a Acceptable Solution or Verification Method for the proposed construction.
- The building work may incorporate unusual design features that fall outside the scope of an Acceptable Solution or Verification Method.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Whatever the reason for using an alternative solution, the Building Code, being performance-based, allows for innovation and applicants have the freedom to propose an innovative solution. Refer to 2.3 'The New Zealand Building Code'.

3.7 Producer statements

A producer statement is a statement supplied by or on behalf of an applicant for a building consent, or by or on behalf of a person who has been granted a building consent. It is a statement that certain work will be, or has been, carried out in accordance with certain technical specifications.

Producer statements were introduced by the former Act and are no longer expressly referred to in the Building Act. A building consent authority may, at their discretion, accept and consider a producer statement as part of the plans or specifications for a building consent. This will assist the building consent authority in deciding whether it is satisfied on reasonable grounds the provisions of the Building Code will be met if the building work is completed in accordance with the plans and specifications. A building consent authority should have a formal procedure or policy in place for the use and consideration of producer statements, especially if a producer statement(s) will be required to prove building work complies with a building consent.

4.0 THE PARTIES AND THEIR RESPONSIBILITIES

Five principal parties are responsible for ensuring that buildings are safe and sanitary in line with the Building Act.

4.1 The Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment (the Ministry)

The Ministry has a range of statutory responsibilities for building and housing, and administers New Zealand's building legislation. The Ministry's building control functions include:

- advising the Minister for Building and Construction on matters relating to building control
- administering and reviewing the Building Code
- producing and maintaining Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods that specify a means of complying with the Building Code
- providing information, guidance, and advice on building controls to all sectors of the building industry and consumers
- implementing, administering and monitoring a system of regulatory controls for a vibrant sector with skilled building professionals
- making determinations, or technical rulings, on matters of interpretation, doubt or dispute.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend 13
Feb 2014

4.2 Territorial authorities

Territorial authorities are responsible for enforcing the Building Act, Regulations and the Building Code in their areas of jurisdiction.

They are responsible for:

- gaining accreditation as a building consent authority
- registering as a building consent authority
- performing the functions of a building consent authority

- issuing project information memoranda
- granting waivers or modifications of the Building Code (not including waivers or modifications relating to access and facilities for people with disabilities)
- issuing certificates of acceptance
- issuing certificates for public use
- determining the extent to which buildings must comply with the Building Code if they are altered, or their use is changed or where there is a specified intended life change
- enforcing the provisions relating to annual building warrants of fitness
- issuing certain notices provided for under the Building Act
- keeping records
- ensuring dangerous, insanitary and earthquake prone buildings are identified and appropriate action taken to remove any danger or insanitary condition
- amending compliance schedules
- carrying out other functions and duties specified in the Building Act.

4.3 Building consent authorities

Building consent authorities are responsible for:

- issuing building consents
- inspecting building work for which they granted a building consent
- issuing notices to fix
- issuing code compliance certificates
- issuing compliance schedules and amending them where the specified systems are affected by building work
- carrying out other functions and duties specified in the Building Act.

4.4 Regional authorities

Regional authorities are responsible for:

- performing the functions of a building consent authority to the extent that those functions relate to dams
- considering and approving dam classifications
- considering and approving dam safety assurance programmes
- administering the Building Act, relating to dam classifications, dam safety assurance programmes and dam compliance certificates
- enforcing provisions of the Building Code and the Building Act and regulations that relate to dams
- adopting a policy on dangerous dams.

4.5 Building owners

Building owners are responsible for:

- detailing work proposals on plans and specifications, including proposals for the inspection and routine maintenance of the specified systems for the purposes of the compliance schedule (if applicable)
- applying for building consents (and amendments to building consents) and project information memoranda
- constructing buildings in accordance with the 'approved plans and specifications'
- organising inspections at given stages as building work progresses
- collecting energy work certificates
- applying for a code compliance certificate as soon as any work carried out under a building consent granted to them is completed
- maintaining buildings in a safe and sanitary manner
- ensuring any specified systems in their building are performing and will continue to perform to the performance standards

- supplying the annual building warrant of fitness, if applicable
- notifying the territorial authority if a change of use, extension of life, or subdivision is proposed
- paying any fees as required by the Building Act.

4.6 Licensed building practitioners

The Building Act set up a licensed building practitioners (LBP) scheme to promote, recognise and support professional skills and behaviour in the building industry. The scheme has seven licence classes covering designers, site supervisors and trades people, such as carpenters, roofers, plasterers and bricklayers.

To become licensed, building practitioners must show they meet the standard for the licence class appropriate for them. Details of LBPs are held on a public register at www.dbh.govt.nz/lbp-register

Once licensed, LBPs are responsible for notifying territorial authorities of breaches of building consents.

Since March 2012, restricted building work on houses and small-medium sized apartment buildings has only been able to be carried out or supervised by LBPs. Restricted building work is design and building work that is critical to the integrity of a house or small-medium sized apartment building. It covers aspects of the primary structure, external moisture management and fire design.

From March 2012:

- any plans and specifications containing restricted building work (relating to design work) must be accompanied by a memorandum issued by the LBP who carried out or supervised the design work, stating that the design work complies with the Building Code

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend 11
Sep 2010

- if an application for a building consent relates to restricted building work, the names of the LBPs carrying out or supervising that work must be given to the building consent authority in the application (if known) or once the work commences, or when the application for the code compliance certificate is made.

The most up-to-date information on the LBP scheme is at www.dbh.govt.nz/lbp

Amend 11
Sep 2010

4.7 Past building control parties

4.7.1 The Building Industry Authority

The Building Industry Authority (the Authority) was a Crown entity, established under the former Act as the sole regulatory authority for building controls in New Zealand. The introduction of the Building Act 2004 has seen the dissolution of the Authority and transfer of its responsibilities to the Department of Building and Housing (now the Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment).

Amend 13
Feb 2014

4.7.2 Building certifier

A building certifier was a person approved by the Authority under the former Act to issue building certificates with respect to specific provisions of the Building Code. A building certifier may have been employed by a building owner as an alternative to using the territorial authority for checking technical proposals and performing inspections. Building certifiers are not provided for under the Building Act except for certain transitional arrangements.

5.0 BUILDING COMPLIANCE PROVISIONS

5.1 Project information memoranda (sections 31 to 39)

A project information memorandum (PIM) provides information known to the territorial authority/regional authority about land, and requirements of the Building Act and other Acts that might be relevant to proposed building work. A PIM is specific to the site and project.

A PIM is a legal document and may have a notice attached to it requiring the owner to obtain other approvals or consents required

by other legislation, such as the Resource Management Act 1991, prior to any work commencing on the project. For example, a PIM might include the fact that the height of a building may contravene a rule in the District Plan, meaning that before work commences, a separate resource consent is required from the territorial authority planning unit.

An application for a building consent is deemed to include an application for a PIM, unless one has been previously issued for the project and this is supplied with the building consent application. In most cases, PIMs and building consents are applied for in a single application. They will be processed as separate applications, but may be issued separately or jointly.

If the application for a PIM affects a registered historic place, historic area, wahi tapu, or wahi tapu area, and a PIM has not been issued for the building work to which the application applies, then the territorial authority must notify the New Zealand Historic Places Trust within five days after receiving the application.

If the territorial authority considers a development contribution under the Local Government Act 2002 is payable by the owner, it may attach a notice (Form 3) that advises the applicant that a code compliance certificate will not be issued until the development contribution is paid.

5.2 Building consents (sections 40 to 52)

A building consent is the formal approval, under section 49 of the Building Act, permitting an applicant to undertake building work in accordance with the plans and specifications approved by the building consent authority. Building work is the construction, alteration, demolition or removal of a building and includes sitework.

A person cannot carry out building work except in accordance with a building consent. There are some exemptions (see sections 41 and 43 and Schedule 1 of the Building Act), but section 17 still requires building work to be carried out in accordance with the Building Code, even if no building consent is required.

5.2.1 Alterations (Section 112)

Where proposed building work involves an alteration to an existing building, the consent must not be granted unless the building consent authority is satisfied that all new building work complies with the Building Code and:

- the altered building will comply as nearly as is reasonably practicable with the Building Code provisions for means of escape from fire and access and facilities for people with disabilities, and
- the altered building will continue to comply with the other provisions of the Building Code to at least the same extent as before the alteration.

However, a territorial authority may allow the alteration of an existing building without complying with provisions of the Building Code specified by the territorial authority, if the territorial authority is satisfied that:

- if the building were required to comply with the relevant provisions of the Building Code, the alterations would not take place, and
- the alteration will result in improvements to attributes of the building that relate to means of escape from fire or access and facilities for persons with disabilities, and
- the improvements mentioned above outweigh any detriment that is likely to arise as a result of the building not complying with the relevant provisions of the Building Code.

5.2.2 Change of use (sections 114 and 115)

Uses of buildings are defined in Schedule 2 of the Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-Prone Buildings) Regulations 2005.

A change of use arises when two criteria are met. The first criterion is that a building's use must change from one use in Schedule 2 to a different use in Schedule 2. The second criterion is the result of that change (first criterion) means the requirements for compliance with the Building Code for the new use are additional to, or more onerous than, the requirements for the old use.

See Regulations 5 and 6 of the Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-Prone Buildings) Regulations 2005.

An owner of a building must give written notice to the territorial authority/regional authority if they propose to change the use of a building.

Where the owner proposes to change the use of a building to one or more household units, where household units did not exist before, they must obtain written notice from the territorial authority. This must state that the territorial authority is satisfied, on reasonable grounds, that the building, in its new use, will comply as nearly as is reasonably practicable, with the Building Code in all respects (usually through the issue of a building consent).

For any other change of use proposal, the owner must get written notice from the territorial authority/regional authority, stating that the authority is satisfied, on reasonable grounds, that the building, in its new use, will comply, as nearly as is reasonably practicable, with every provision of the Building Code that relates to either or both of the following matters:

- means of escape from fire, protection of other property, sanitary facilities, structural performance, and fire-rating performance
- access and facilities for people with disabilities (if this is a requirement under section 118 of the Building Act).

The territorial authority/regional authority must also be satisfied that the building will continue to comply with the other provisions of the Building Code to at least the same extent as before the change of use.

5.2.3 Extension of life (sections 114 and 116)

Where a building with a specified intended life is issued with a building consent that is subject to the condition that the building be altered before the end of its life, an 'extension of life' can be obtained.

An owner of a building must give written notice to the territorial authority/regional authority if it proposes to extend the life of a building.

The territorial authority/regional authority can only give its consent to the extension of life if it is satisfied that:

- the building has been altered in accordance with the original condition
- the alteration complies with section 112 of the Building Act (Alterations).

5.2.4 Subdivision (sections 114 and 116A)

An owner of a building must give written notice to the territorial authority if it proposes to subdivide land in a manner that affects a building.

The territorial authority can only issue a certificate under section 224(f) (relating to cross lease, company lease, and unit titles) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for the purpose of giving effect to a subdivision affecting a building or part of a building, if it is satisfied that the building will comply as nearly as reasonably practicable with every provision of the Building Code that relates to one or more of the following.

- Means of escape from fire
- Access and facilities for people with disabilities
- Protection of other property

The building must also continue to comply with other provisions of the Building Code to at least the same extent as it did before the application for subdivision was made.

5.2.5 Access for persons with disabilities (sections 117 to 120 and Schedule 2)

Any building (including parts of a building such as a driveway) that is open to the public, whether or not they are charged for entry, must have reasonable and adequate provision for access, parking and sanitary facilities for people with disabilities who may be expected to work or visit that building and carry out normal activities and processes in that building.

The most recent version of NZS 4121 Code of Practice for Design for Access and Use of Buildings by Persons with Disabilities is to be taken as an Acceptable Solution.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

5.3 Code compliance certificate (sections 91 to 95)

A code compliance certificate (CCC) is a formal statement, issued under section 95 of the Building Act, which states that building work carried out under a building consent application complies with that building consent. A CCC provides assurance to the owner and subsequent property owners that the approved plans and specifications have been followed.

A CCC is not issued until all building work has been completed as per the plans and specifications submitted with the building consent application.

A CCC must be applied for after all building work carried out under a building consent granted to the owner is completed.

An application for a CCC where the building work was carried out under a consent granted under the former Act must be considered and determined as if the Building Act had not been passed. However, section 43(2) of the former Act must be read as if a CCC may only be issued if the territorial authority is satisfied that the building work complies with the Building Code that applied at the time the building consent was granted.

5.4 Certificates of acceptance (sections 96 to 99)

Certificates of acceptance were introduced by the Building Act. The certificate confirms that, to the extent an inspection was able to be carried out, the building work complies with the Building Code. A certificate of acceptance therefore has some similarities to a CCC in that it will provide some verification for a building owner, or future building owner, that all or part of the work is compliant.

A certificate of acceptance can be obtained in situations where:

- work has been done without a building consent when one should have been obtained
- a building consent authority or building certifier is unable or refuses to issue a CCC
- verification is required of urgent building work carried out under section 42 of the Building Act.

A certificate of acceptance can also be used in limited circumstances in relation to section 363B.

A certificate of acceptance is based on verification with the Building Code that was in place **at the time of application**. It is not based on what was in place at the time a building consent was granted, or should have been applied for, or when the work was actually carried out.

5.5 Notices to fix (sections 163 to 168)

A notice to fix is a statutory notice requiring a person to remedy a breach of the Building Act or Regulations under the Act. A notice to fix can be issued for all breaches of the Building Act, including non-complying building work, and for an incorrect building warrant of fitness or a compliance schedule that is not being properly complied with. A notice to fix can state that all or any building work must cease immediately.

A building consent authority, regional authority or a territorial authority must issue a notice to fix for any contravention of the Building Act and Building Regulations under section 164 of the Building Act. When a notice to fix has been issued by a building consent authority that is not a territorial authority or a regional authority, the matter is then handed to the territorial authority or regional authority to decide whether the notice has been complied with.

Some examples of where notices could be issued include:

- carrying out building work other than in accordance with a building consent
- displaying an incorrect building warrant of fitness
- changing the use of a building without notifying the territorial authority or regional authority.

5.6 Compliance schedules (sections 100 to 107)

A compliance schedule lists specified systems within a building. The compliance schedule for a building must identify which specified systems are present, the performance standards for those systems, and how those systems will be inspected and maintained to ensure they continue to function.

For more information on compliance schedules, see the Compliance Schedule Handbook.

5.7 Building warrants of fitness (sections 108 to 111)

A building warrant of fitness (BWoF) is a statement supplied by a building owner, to the territorial authority confirming that the systems specified in the compliance schedule for their building have been maintained and checked in accordance with the compliance schedule for the previous 12 months, and will continue to perform as required. For more information on building warrants of fitness, see the Compliance Schedule Handbook.

5.8 Certificates for public use (section 363A)

Amend 13
Feb 2014

A certificate for public use is a safety provision under the Building Act. It is a tool that can be used to certify that premises or parts of premises affected by building work are safe to be used by the public. Certificates for public use can only be used where a building consent has been granted for the building work but no CCC has yet been issued. Certificates for public use do not relieve the owner of a building from the obligation to apply for a CCC after all the building work has been carried out.

5.9 Building certificate

A building certificate was a formal confirmation by a building certifier that specific aspects of a building would or do comply with the Building Code. A territorial authority was obliged to accept such a certificate. Building certificates were allowed for under the former Act, but are only included under the Building Act 2004 as transitional allowances to phase them out.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Contents

	Page		Page			
A	General Provisions	19	G	Services and Facilities	56	
A1	Classified uses	19	G1	Personal hygiene	56	
A2	Interpretation	21	G2	Laundering	57	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	A3	Building importance levels	22	G3	Food preparation and prevention of contamination	58
B	Stability	23	G4	Ventilation	60	
B1	Structure	23	G5	Interior environment	61	
B2	Durability	25	G6	Airborne and impact sound	63	
C	Protection from fire	27	G7	Natural light	64	
C1	Objectives of clauses C2 to C6	27	G8	Artificial light	65	
C2	Prevention of fire occurring	28	G9	Electricity	66	
C3	Fire affecting areas beyond the fire source	29	G10	Piped services	68	
C4	Movement to a place of safety	33	G11	Gas as an energy source	69	
C5	Access and safety for firefighting operations	33A	G12	Water supplies	70	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	C6	Structural stability	33C	G13	Foul water	72
D	Access	34	G14	Industrial liquid waste	74	
D1	Access routes	34	G15	Solid waste	76	
D2	Mechanical installations for access	38	H	Energy Efficiency	77	
E	Moisture	41	H1	Energy efficiency	77	
E1	Surface water	41				
E2	External moisture	42				
E3	Internal moisture	44				
F	Safety of Users	45				
F1	Hazardous agents on site	45				
F2	Hazardous building materials	46				
F3	Hazardous substances and processes	47				
F4	Safety from falling	48				
F5	Construction and demolition hazards	49				
F6	Visibility in escape routes	52				
F7	Warning systems	54				
Amend 11 Sep 2010	F8	Signs	55			

Amend 11
Sep 2010

A General Provisions

CLAUSE A1—CLASSIFIED USES

1.0 EXPLANATION

1.0.1 For the purposes of this building code *buildings* are classified according to type, under seven categories.

1.0.2 A *building* with a given classified use may have one or more intended uses as defined in the Act.

2.0 HOUSING

2.0.1 Applies to *buildings* or use where there is self care and service (internal management). There are three types:

2.0.2 Detached Dwellings

Applies to a *building* or use where a group of people live as a single household or family. Examples: a holiday cottage, boarding house accommodating fewer than 6 people, dwelling or hut.

2.0.3 Multi-unit Dwelling

Applies to a *building* or use which contains more than one separate household or family. Examples: an attached dwelling, flat or multi-unit apartment.

2.0.4 Group Dwelling

Applies to a *building* or use where groups of people live as one large extended family. Examples: within a commune or marae.

3.0 COMMUNAL RESIDENTIAL

3.0.1 Applies to *buildings* or use where assistance or care is extended to the *principal users*. There are two types:

3.0.2 Community Service

Applies to a residential *building* or use where limited assistance or care is extended to the *principal users*. Examples: a boarding house, hall of residence, holiday cabin, [backcountry hut,] hostel, hotel, motel, nurses' home, retirement village, time-share accommodation, a work camp, or camping ground.

3.0.3 Community Care

Applies to a residential *building* or use where a large degree of assistance or care is extended to the *principal users*. There are two types:

(a) **Unrestrained**; where the *principal users* are free to come and go. Examples: a hospital, an old people's home or a health camp.

(b) **Restrained**; where the *principal users* are legally or physically constrained in their movements. Examples: a borstal or drug rehabilitation centre, an old people's home where substantial care is extended, a prison or hospital.

4.0 COMMUNAL NON-RESIDENTIAL

4.0.1 Applies to a *building* or use being a meeting place for people where care and service is provided by people other than the *principal users*. There are two types:

4.0.2 Assembly Service

Applies to a *building* or use where limited care and service is provided. Examples: a church, cinema, clubroom, hall, museum, public swimming pool, stadium, theatre, or whare runanga (the assembly house).

Schedule 1 clause A1 3.0.2: amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 4 of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).

CLAUSE A1—CLASSIFIED USES (continued)**4.0.3 Assembly Care**

Applies to a *building* or use where a large degree of care and service is provided. Examples: an [early childhood education and care centre], college, day care institution, centre for handicapped persons, kindergarten, school or university.

5.0 COMMERCIAL

5.0.1 Applies to a *building* or use in which any natural resources, goods, services or money are either developed, sold, exchanged or stored. Examples: an amusement park, auction room, bank, car-park, catering facility, coffee bar, computer centre, fire station, funeral parlour, hairdresser, library, office (commercial or government), police station, post office, public laundry, radio station, restaurant, service station, shop, showroom, storage facility, television station or transport terminal.

6.0 INDUSTRIAL

6.0.1 Applies to a *building* or use where people use material and physical effort to:

- (a) extract or convert natural resources,
- (b) produce goods or energy from natural or converted resources,
- (c) repair goods, or
- (d) store goods (ensuing from the industrial process).

Examples: an agricultural building, agricultural processing facility, aircraft hanger, factory, power station, sewage treatment works, warehouse or utility.

7.0 OUTBUILDINGS

7.0.1 Applies to a *building* or use which may be included within each classified use but are not intended for human habitation, and are accessory to the principal use of associated *buildings*. Examples: a carport, farm *building*, garage, greenhouse, machinery room, private swimming pool, public toilet, or shed.

8.0 ANCILLARY

8.0.1 Applies to a *building* or use not for human habitation and which may be exempted from some amenity provisions, but which are required to comply with structural and safety-related aspects of the *building code*. Examples: a bridge, derrick, fence, free standing outdoor fireplace, jetty, mast, path, platform, pylon, retaining wall, tank, tunnel or dam.

Schedule 1 clause A1 4.0.3: amended, on 1 December 2008, by section 60(2) of the Education Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 19).

CLAUSE A2—INTERPRETATION

This Clause of the New Zealand Building Code lists defined words used within the Code.

Those definitions, plus defined word or terms used in the Compliance Documents, are included in the section on definitions in this Handbook.

[CLAUSE A3—BUILDING IMPORTANCE LEVELS

For the purposes of clause C, a *building* has one of the importance levels set out below:

Importance level	Description of building type	Specific structure
Importance level 1	<i>Buildings</i> posing low risk to human life or the environment, or a low economic cost, should the building fail. These are typically small non-habitable <i>buildings</i> , such as sheds, barns, and the like, that are not normally occupied, though they may have occupants from time to time.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ancillary <i>buildings</i> not for human habitation • Minor storage facilities • Backcountry huts
Importance level 2	<i>Buildings</i> posing normal risk to human life or the environment, or a normal economic cost, should the <i>building</i> fail. These are typical residential, commercial, and industrial <i>buildings</i> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All <i>buildings</i> and facilities except those listed in importance levels 1, 3, 4, and 5
Importance level 3	<i>Buildings</i> of a higher level of societal benefit or importance, or with higher levels of risk-significant factors to building occupants. These <i>buildings</i> have increased performance requirements because they may house large numbers of people, vulnerable populations, or occupants with other risk factors, or fulfil a role of increased importance to the local community or to society in general.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Buildings</i> where more than 300 people congregate in 1 area • <i>Buildings</i> with primary school, secondary school, or daycare facilities with a capacity greater than 250 • <i>Buildings</i> with tertiary or adult education facilities with a capacity greater than 500 • Health care facilities with a capacity of 50 or more residents but not having surgery or emergency treatment facilities • Jails and detention facilities • Any other <i>building</i> with a capacity of 5 000 or more people • <i>Buildings</i> for power generating facilities, water treatment for potable water, wastewater treatment facilities, and other public utilities facilities not included in importance level 4

Schedule 1 clause A3: inserted, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 5 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

[CLAUSE A3—BUILDING IMPORTANCE LEVELS (continued)

Importance level	Description of building type	Specific structure
Importance level 3 (continued)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Buildings</i> not included in importance level 4 or 5 containing sufficient quantities of highly toxic gas or explosive materials capable of causing acutely hazardous conditions that do not extend beyond property boundaries
Importance level 4	<i>Buildings</i> that are essential to post-disaster recovery or associated with hazardous facilities.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hospitals and other health care facilities having surgery or emergency treatment facilities • <i>Fire</i>, rescue, and police stations and emergency vehicle garages • <i>Buildings</i> intended to be used as emergency shelters • <i>Buildings</i> intended by the owner to contribute to emergency preparedness, or to be used for communication, and operation centres in an emergency, and other facilities required for emergency response • Power generating stations and other utilities required as emergency backup facilities for importance level 3 structures • <i>Buildings</i> housing highly toxic gas or explosive materials capable of causing acutely hazardous conditions that extend beyond property boundaries • Aviation control towers, air traffic control centres, and emergency aircraft hangars • <i>Buildings</i> having critical national defence functions • Water treatment facilities required to maintain water pressure for fire suppression

Schedule 1 clause A3: inserted, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 5 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

[CLAUSE A3—BUILDING IMPORTANCE LEVELS (continued)

Importance level	Description of building type	Specific structure
Importance level 4 (continued)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ancillary <i>buildings</i> (including, but not limited to, communication towers, fuel storage tanks or other structures housing or supporting water or other <i>fire</i> suppression material or equipment) required for operation of importance level 4 structures during an emergency
Importance level 5	<i>Buildings</i> whose failure poses catastrophic risk to a large area (eg, 100 km ²) or a large number of people (eg, 100 000).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Major dams Extremely hazardous facilities

Schedule 1 clause A3: inserted, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 5 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

B Stability

CLAUSE B1—STRUCTURE

Provisions

OBJECTIVE

B1.1 The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) Safeguard people from injury caused by structural failure,
- (b) Safeguard people from loss of *amenity* caused by structural behaviour, and
- (c) Protect other property from physical damage caused by structural failure.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

B1.2 *Buildings, building elements and sitework* shall withstand the combination of loads that they are likely to experience during *construction or alteration* and throughout their lives.

PERFORMANCE

B1.3.1 *Buildings, building elements and sitework* shall have a low probability of rupturing, becoming unstable, losing equilibrium, or collapsing during *construction or alteration* and throughout their lives.

B1.3.2 *Buildings, building elements and sitework* shall have a low probability of causing loss of *amenity* through undue deformation, vibratory response, degradation, or other physical characteristics throughout their lives, or during *construction or alteration* when the *building* is in use.

B1.3.3 Account shall be taken of all physical conditions likely to affect the stability of *buildings, building elements and sitework*, including:

- (a) Self-weight,
- (b) Imposed gravity loads arising from use,
- (c) Temperature,
- (d) Earth pressure,
- (e) Water and other liquids,
- (f) Earthquake,
- (g) Snow,
- (h) Wind,
- (i) *Fire*,

Limits on application

CLAUSE B1—STRUCTURE (continued)**Provisions**

- (j) Impact,
- (k) Explosion,
- (l) Reversing or fluctuating effects,
- (m) Differential movement,
- (n) Vegetation,
- (o) Adverse effects due to insufficient separation from other *buildings*,
- (p) Influence of equipment, services, non-structural elements and contents,
- (q) Time dependent effects including creep and shrinkage, and
- (r) Removal of support.

B1.3.4 Due allowance shall be made for:

- (a) The consequences of failure,
- (b) The intended use of the *building*,
- (c) Effects of uncertainties resulting from *construction* activities, or the sequence in which *construction* activities occur,
- (d) Variation in the properties of materials and the characteristics of the site, and
- (e) Accuracy limitations inherent in the methods used to predict the stability of *buildings*.

B1.3.5 The demolition of *buildings* shall be carried out in a way that avoids the likelihood of premature collapse.

B1.3.6 *Sitework*, where necessary, shall be carried out to:

- (a) Provide stability for *construction* on the site, and
- (b) Avoid the likelihood of damage to *other property*.

B1.3.7 Any *sitework* and associated supports shall take account of the effects of:

- (a) Changes in ground water level,
- (b) Water, weather and vegetation, and
- (c) Ground loss and slumping.

Limits on application

CLAUSE B2—DURABILITY**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

B2.1 The objective of this provision is to ensure that a *building* will throughout its life continue to satisfy the other objectives of this code.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

B2.2 *Building* materials, components and *construction* methods shall be sufficiently durable to ensure that the *building*, without reconstruction or major renovation, satisfies the other functional requirements of this code throughout the life of the *building*.

PERFORMANCE

B2.3.1 *Building elements* must, with only normal maintenance, continue to satisfy the performance requirements of this code for the lesser of the *specified intended life* of the *building*, if stated, or:

(a) The life of the *building*, being not less than 50 years, if:

(i) Those *building elements* (including floors, walls, and fixings) provide structural stability to the *building*, or

(ii) Those *building elements* are difficult to access or replace, or

(iii) Failure of those *building elements* to comply with the *building code* would go undetected during both normal use and maintenance of the building

(b) 15 years if:

(i) Those *building elements* (including the *building* envelope, exposed plumbing in the subfloor space, and in-built chimneys and flues) are moderately difficult to access or replace, or

(ii) Failure of those *building elements* to comply with the *building code* would go undetected during normal use of the *building*, but would be easily detected during normal maintenance.

Limits on application

Performance B2.3.1 applies from the time of issue of the applicable *code compliance certificate*. *Building elements* are not required to satisfy a durability performance which exceeds the *specified intended life* of the *building*

Clause B2.3 Schedule was substituted, as from 11 September 1997, by regulation 2 Building Amendment Regulations 1997 (SR 1997/156).

CLAUSE B2—DURABILITY (continued)**Provisions**

(c) 5 years if:

(i) The *building elements* (including services, linings, renewable protective coatings, and *fixtures*) are easy to access and replace, and

(ii) Failure of those *building elements* to comply with the *building code* would be easily detected during normal use of the *building*.

B2.3.2 Individual *building elements* which are components of a *building system* and are difficult to access or replace must either:

(a) All have the same durability, or

(b) Be installed in a manner that permits the replacement of *building elements* of lesser durability without removing *building elements* that have greater durability and are not specifically designed for removal and replacement.

Limits on application

C Protection from fire

[C1—OBJECTIVES OF CLAUSES C2 TO C6 (PROTECTION FROM FIRE)]

Provisions

The objectives of clauses C2 to C6 are to:

- (a) safeguard people from an unacceptable risk of injury or illness caused by *fire*,
- (b) protect *other property* from damage caused by *fire*, and
- (c) facilitate firefighting and rescue operations.

Limit on application

Schedule 1 clause C1: replaced, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

[C2—PREVENTION OF FIRE OCCURRING**Provisions****FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT**

C2.1 Fixed appliances using controlled combustion and other fixed equipment must be designed, constructed, and installed in *buildings* in a way that reduces the likelihood of illness or injury due to *fire* occurring.

PERFORMANCE

C2.2 The maximum surface temperature of *combustible building materials* close to fixed appliances using controlled combustion and other fixed equipment when operating at their design level must not exceed 90°C.

C2.3 Fixed appliances using controlled combustion and other fixed equipment must be designed, constructed and installed so that there is a low probability of explosive or hazardous conditions occurring within any spaces in or around the *building* that contains the appliances.

Limit on application

Schedule 1 clause C2: replaced, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

[C3—FIRE AFFECTING AREAS BEYOND THE FIRE SOURCE

Provisions

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

C3.1 *Buildings* must be designed and constructed so that there is a low probability of injury or illness to persons not in close proximity to a *fire source*.

C3.2 *Buildings* with a *building height* greater than 10 m where upper floors contain sleeping uses or *other property* must be designed and constructed so that there is a low probability of external vertical fire spread to upper floors in the *building*.

C3.3 *Buildings* must be designed and constructed so that there is a low probability of *fire* spread to *other property* vertically or horizontally across a *relevant boundary*.

Limit on application

Clause C3.2 does not apply to importance level 1 *buildings*.

Schedule 1 clause C3: replaced, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

[C3—FIRE AFFECTING AREAS BEYOND THE FIRE SOURCE (continued)**Provisions****PERFORMANCE**

C3.4 (a) materials used as internal surface linings in the following areas of *buildings* must meet the performance criteria specified below:

Limit on application

Clause C3.4 does not apply to *detached dwellings*, within *household units* in *multi-unit dwellings*, or *outbuildings* and *ancillary buildings*.

Area of <i>building</i>	Performance determined under conditions described in ISO 9705: 1993	
	<i>Buildings not protected with an automatic fire sprinkler system</i>	<i>Buildings protected with an automatic fire sprinkler system</i>
Wall/ceiling materials in sleeping areas where care or detention is provided	Material Group Number 1-S	Material Group Number 1 or 2
Wall/ceiling materials in exitways	Material Group Number 1-S	Material Group Number 1 or 2
Wall/ceiling materials in all <i>occupied spaces</i> in importance level 4 <i>buildings</i>	Material Group Number 1-S	Material Group Number 1 or 2
Internal surfaces of ducts for <i>HVAC systems</i>	Material Group Number 1-S	Material Group Number 1 or 2
Ceiling materials in crowd and sleeping uses except <i>household units</i> and where care or detention is provided	Material Group Number 1-S or 2-S	Material Group Number 1 or 2
Wall materials in crowd and sleeping uses except <i>household units</i> and where care or detention is provided	Material Group Number 1-S or 2-S	Material Group Number 1, 2, or 3
Wall/ceiling materials in occupied spaces in all other locations in <i>buildings</i> , including <i>household units</i>	Material Group Number 1, 2, or 3	Material Group Number 1, 2, or 3
External surfaces of ducts for <i>HVAC systems</i>	Material Group Number 1, 2, or 3	Material Group Number 1, 2, or 3
Acoustic treatment and pipe insulation within airhandling plenums in sleeping uses	Material Group Number 1, 2, or 3	Material Group Number 1, 2, or 3

Schedule 1 clause C3: replaced, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

[C3—FIRE AFFECTING AREAS BEYOND THE FIRE SOURCE (continued)

Provisions

(b) floor surface materials in the following areas of *buildings* must meet the performance criteria specified below:

Limit on application

Area of <i>building</i>	Minimum critical radiant flux when tested to ISO 9239-1: 2010	
	<i>Buildings not protected with an automatic fire sprinkler system</i>	<i>Buildings protected with an automatic fire sprinkler system</i>
Sleeping areas and exitways in <i>buildings</i> where care or detention is provided	4.5 kW/m ²	2.2 kW/m ²
Exitways in all other <i>buildings</i>	2.2 kW/m ²	2.2 kW/m ²
<i>Firecells</i> accommodating more than 50 persons	2.2 kW/m ²	1.2 kW/m ²
All other occupied spaces except <i>household units</i>	1.2 kW/m ²	1.2 kW/m ²

(c) suspended flexible fabrics and membrane structures used in the construction of *buildings* must have properties resulting in a low probability of injury or illness to persons not in close proximity to a *fire source*.

C3.5 *Buildings* must be designed and constructed so that fire does not spread more than 3.5 m vertically from the *fire source* over the external cladding of multi-level *buildings*.

C3.6 *Buildings* must be designed and constructed so that in the event of *fire* in the building the received radiation at the *relevant boundary* of the property does not exceed 30 kW/m² and at a distance of 1 m beyond the relevant boundary of the property does not exceed 16 kW/m².

Schedule 1 clause C3: replaced, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

[C3—FIRE AFFECTING AREAS BEYOND THE FIRE SOURCE (continued)**Provisions**

C3.7 External walls of *buildings* that are located closer than 1 m to the *relevant boundary* of the property on which the *building* stands must either:

- (a) be constructed from materials which are not *combustible building materials*, or
- (b) for *buildings* in importance levels 3 and 4, be constructed from materials that, when subjected to a radiant flux of 30 kW/m², do not ignite for 30 minutes, or
- (c) for *buildings* in Importance Levels 1 and 2, be constructed from materials that, when subjected to a radiant flux of 30 kW/m², do not ignite for 15 minutes.

C3.8 *Firecells* located within 15 m of a *relevant boundary* that are not protected by an automatic *fire* sprinkler system, and that contain a *fire load* greater than 20 TJ or that have a floor area greater than 5,000 m² must be designed and constructed so that at the time that firefighters first apply water to the *fire*, the maximum radiation flux at 1.5 m above the floor is no greater than 4.5 kW/m² and the smoke layer is not less than 2 m above the floor.

C3.9 *Buildings* must be designed and constructed with regard to the likelihood and consequence of failure of any *fire safety* system intended to control *fire* spread.

Limit on application

Schedule 1 clause C3: replaced, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

[C4—MOVEMENT TO PLACE OF SAFETY

Provisions	Limit on application
<p>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</p> <p>C4.1 <i>Buildings</i> must be provided with:</p> <p>(a) effective means of giving warning of <i>fire</i>, and</p> <p>(b) visibility in <i>escape routes</i> complying with clause F6.</p> <p>C4.2 <i>Buildings</i> must be provided with means of escape to ensure that there is a low probability of occupants of those buildings being unreasonably delayed or impeded from moving to a <i>place of safety</i> and that those occupants will not suffer injury or illness as a result.</p> <p>PERFORMANCE</p> <p>C4.3 The <i>evacuation time</i> must allow occupants of a building to move to a <i>place of safety</i> in the event of a fire so that occupants are not exposed to any of the following:</p> <p>(a) a <i>fractional effective dose</i> of carbon monoxide greater than 0.3:</p> <p>(b) a <i>fractional effective dose</i> of thermal effects greater than 0.3:</p> <p>(c) conditions where, due to smoke obscuration, visibility is less than 10 m except in rooms of less than 100 m² where visibility may fall to 5 m.</p> <p>C4.4 Clause C4.3(b) and (c) do not apply where it is not possible to expose more than 1 000 occupants in a <i>firecell</i> protected with an automatic <i>fire</i> sprinkler system.</p> <p>C4.5 Means of escape to a <i>place of safety</i> in <i>buildings</i> must be designed and constructed with regard to the likelihood and consequence of failure of any <i>fire safety systems</i>.</p>	

Schedule 1 clause C4: replaced, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

**[C5—ACCESS AND SAFETY FOR
FIREFIGHTING OPERATIONS****Provisions****FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT**

C5.1 *Buildings* must be designed and constructed so that there is a low probability of firefighters or other emergency services personnel being delayed in or impeded from assisting in rescue operations and performing firefighting operations.

C5.2 *Buildings* must be designed and constructed so that there is a low probability of illness or injury to firefighters or other emergency services personnel during rescue and firefighting operations.

PERFORMANCE

C5.3 *Buildings* must be provided with access for fire service vehicles to a hard-standing from which there is an unobstructed path to the *building* within 20 m of:

- (a) the firefighter access into the *building*, and
- (b) the inlets to automatic fire sprinkler systems or fire hydrant systems, where these are installed.

C5.4 Access for fire service vehicles in accordance with clause C5.3 must be provided to more than 1 side of *firecells* greater than 5,000 m² in floor area that are not protected by an automatic fire sprinkler system.

C5.5 *Buildings* must be provided with the means to deliver water for firefighting to all parts of the *building*.

C5.6 *Buildings* must be designed and constructed in a manner that will allow firefighters, taking into account the firefighters' personal protective equipment and standard training, to:

- (a) reach the floor of fire origin,
- (b) search the general area of fire origin, and
- (c) protect their means of egress.

Limit on application

Performance requirements in clauses C5.3 to C5.8 do not apply to *backcountry huts*, *detached dwellings*, within *household units* in *multi-unit dwellings*, or to *outbuildings*, and *ancillary buildings*.

Schedule 1 clause C5: inserted, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

**[C5—ACCESS AND SAFETY FOR
FIREFIGHTING OPERATIONS** (continued)**Provisions**

C5.7 *Buildings* must be provided with means of giving clear information to enable firefighters to:

- (a) establish the general location of the *fire*,
- (b) identify the *fire safety systems* available in the *building*, and
- (c) establish the presence of *hazardous substances* or process in the *building*.

C5.8 Means to provide access for and safety of firefighters in *buildings* must be designed and constructed with regard to the likelihood and consequence of failure of any *fire safety systems*.

Limit on application

Schedule 1 clause C5: inserted, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

[C6—STRUCTURAL STABILITY**Provisions****FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT**

C6.1 Structural systems in *buildings* must be constructed to maintain structural stability during *fire* so that there is:

- (a) a low probability of injury or illness to occupants,
- (b) a low probability of injury or illness to *fire* service personnel during rescue and firefighting operations, and
- (c) a low probability of direct or consequential damage to adjacent *household units* or *other property*.

PERFORMANCE

C6.2 Structural systems in *buildings* that are necessary for structural stability in *fire* must be designed and constructed so that they remain stable during *fire* and after *fire* when required to protect *other property* taking into account:

- (a) the *fire* severity,
- (b) any automatic fire sprinkler systems within the *buildings*,
- (c) any other active *fire safety systems* that affect the *fire* severity and its impact on structural stability, and
- (d) the likelihood and consequence of failure of any *fire safety systems* that affect the *fire* severity and its impact on structural stability.

C6.3 Structural systems in *buildings* that are necessary to provide firefighters with safe access to floors for the purpose of conducting firefighting and rescue operations must be designed and constructed so that they remain stable during and after *fire*.

C6.4 Collapse of building elements that have lesser *fire* resistance must not cause the consequential collapse of elements that are required to have a higher *fire* resistance.

Limit on application

Schedule 1 clause C6: inserted, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

This page deliberately left blank

D Access

CLAUSE D1—ACCESS ROUTES

Provisions

OBJECTIVE

D1.1 The objective of this provision is:

- (a) Safeguard people from injury during movement into, within and out of *buildings*,
- (b) Safeguard people from injury resulting from the movement of vehicles into, within and out of *buildings*, and
- (c) Ensure that *people with disabilities* are able to enter and carry out normal activities and functions within *buildings*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

D1.2.1 *Buildings* shall be provided with reasonable and adequate access to enable safe and easy movement of people.

D1.2.2 Where a *building* is provided with loading or parking spaces, they shall be constructed to permit safe and easy unloading and movement of vehicles, and to avoid conflict between vehicles and pedestrians.

PERFORMANCE

D1.3.1 *Access routes* shall enable people to:

- (a) Safely and easily approach the main entrance of *buildings* from the apron or construction edge of a *building*,
- (b) Enter *buildings*,
- (c) Move into spaces within *buildings* by such means as corridors, doors, stairs, ramps and lifts,
- (d) Manoeuvre and park cars, and
- (e) Manoeuvre and park delivery vehicles required to use the loading space.

D1.3.2 At least one *access route* shall have features to enable *people with disabilities* to:

- (a) Approach the *building* from the street boundary or, where required to be provided, the *building* car park,
- (b) Have access to the internal space served by the principal access, and
- (c) Have access to and within those spaces where they may be expected to work or visit, or which contain facilities for personal hygiene as required by Clause G1 "Personal Hygiene".

Limits on application

Objective D1.1(c) shall apply only to those *buildings* to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Requirement D1.2.1 shall not apply to *Ancillary buildings* or *Outbuildings*.

Performance D1.3.2 shall not apply to *Housing*, *Outbuildings*, [*backcountry huts*.] *Ancillary buildings*, and to *Industrial buildings* where no more than 10 people are employed.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

The limits on application to clause D1.1(c) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression ""section 47A of the Act"" for the expression ""section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975"".

Schedule 1 clause D1.3.2: amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 7 of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).

CLAUSE D1—ACCESS ROUTES (continued)**Provisions****D1.3.3** Access routes shall:

- (a) Have *adequate* activity space,
- (b) Be free from dangerous obstructions and from any projections likely to cause an obstruction,
- (c) Have a safe cross fall, and safe slope in the direction of travel,
- (d) Have *adequate* slip-resistant walking surfaces under all conditions of normal use,
- (e) Include stairs to allow access to upper floors irrespective of whether an escalator or lift has been provided,
- (f) Have stair treads, and ladder treads or rungs which:
 - (i) provide *adequate* footing, and
 - (ii) have uniform rise within each flight and for consecutive flights,
- (g) Have stair treads with a leading edge that can be easily seen,
- (h) Have stair treads which prevent children falling through or becoming held fast between treads, where open risers are used,
- (i) Not contain isolated steps,
- (j) Have smooth, reachable and graspable *handrails* to provide support and to assist with movement along a stair or ladder,
- (k) Have *handrails* of *adequate* strength and rigidity as required by Clause B1 "Structure",
- (l) Have landings of appropriate dimensions and at appropriate intervals along a stair or ramp to prevent undue fatigue,
- (m) Have landings of appropriate dimensions where a door opens from or onto a stair, ramp or ladder so that the door does not create a hazard, and
- (n) Have any automatically controlled doors constructed to avoid the risk of people becoming caught or being struck by moving parts.

Limits on application

Performance D1.3.3(h) shall not apply within *Industrial buildings*, *Outbuildings* and *Ancillary buildings*.

Performance D1.3.3(i) shall not apply with *Detached Dwellings* or within *household units* of *Multi-unit Dwellings*, or to *Outbuildings* and *Ancillary buildings*.

Performance D1.3.3(j) shall not apply to isolated steps.

CLAUSE D1—ACCESS ROUTES (continued)**Provisions**

D1.3.4 An *accessible route*, in addition to the requirement of Clause D1.3.3, shall:

- (a) Be easy to find, as required by Clause F8 “Signs”,
- (b) Have *adequate* activity space to enable a person in a wheelchair to negotiate the route while permitting an ambulant person to pass,
- (c) Include a lift complying with Clause D2 “Mechanical Installations for Access” to upper floors where:
 - (i) *buildings* are four or more storeys high,
 - (ii) *buildings* are three storeys high and have a total design occupancy of 50 or more persons on the two upper floors,
 - (iii) *buildings* are two storeys high and have a total design occupancy of 40 or more persons on the upper floor, or
 - (iv) an upper floor, irrespective of design occupancy, is to be used for the purposes of public reception areas of banks, central, regional and local government offices and facilities, hospitals, medical and dental surgeries and medical, paramedical and other primary health care centres,
- (d) Contain no thresholds or upstands forming a barrier to an unaided wheelchair user,
- (e) Have means to prevent the wheel of a wheelchair dropping over the side of the *accessible route*,
- (f) Have doors and related hardware which are easily used,
- (g) Not include spiral stairs, or stairs having open risers,
- (h) Have stair treads with leading edge which is rounded, and
- (i) Have *handrails* on both sides of the *accessible route* when the slope of the route exceeds 1 in 20. The *handrails* shall be continuous along both sides of the stair, ramp and landing except where the *handrail* is interrupted by a doorway.

Limits on application

CLAUSE D1—ACCESS ROUTES (continued)**Provisions**

D1.3.5 Vehicle spaces and circulation routes shall have:

- (a) Dimensions appropriate to the *intended use*,
- (b) Appropriate crossfall, and slope in the direction of travel,
- (c) *Adequate* queuing and circulation space, and
- (d) *Adequate* sight distances.

D1.3.6 Vehicle spaces for use by *people with disabilities*, shall, in addition to the requirements of Clause D1.3.5, be:

- (a) Provided in sufficient numbers,
- (b) Located to avoid conflict between vehicles and people using or moving to or from the space, and
- (c) Easy to find as required by Clause F8 Signs.

Limits on application

CLAUSE D2—MECHANICAL INSTALLATIONS FOR ACCESS**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

D2.1 The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) Safeguard people from injury and loss of amenity while using mechanical installations for movement into, within and out of *buildings*,
- (b) Safeguard maintenance personnel from injury while servicing mechanical installations for access, and
- (c) Ensure that *people with disabilities* are able to carry out normal activities and processes within *buildings*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

D2.2 Mechanical installations for access into, within and out of *buildings* shall provide for the safe and easy movement of people, and for the safety of maintenance personnel.

PERFORMANCE

D2.3.1 Mechanical installations for access shall:

- (a) Move people safely, and stop and hold as required for the normal use of the installation, for all loads up to and including 25% in excess of the rated load,
- (b) Not produce excessive acceleration or deceleration,
- (c) Be constructed to avoid the likelihood of people falling, tripping, becoming caught, being able to touch or be struck by moving parts, sharp edges or projections, under both normal and reasonably foreseeable abnormal conditions of use,
- (d) Be constructed to prevent collision between components, or between components and the *building*,
- (e) Have a control system that ensures safe abnormal operation in the event of overloading or failure of any single component, and
- (f) Be capable of being isolated for inspection, testing and maintenance.

Limits on application

Objective D2.1(c) shall apply only to those *buildings* to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

The limits on application to clause D2.1(c) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression "section 47A of the Act" for the expression "section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975".

CLAUSE D2—MECHANICAL INSTALLATIONS FOR ACCESS (continued)

Provisions

D2.3.2 Mechanical installations for access shall be provided with:

- (a) *Adequate* control over normal use, to ensure people’s safety throughout any operation involving starting, stopping or changing the direction of travel,
- (b) Notification of position, where people are fully enclosed and the installation serves more than two levels,
- (c) *Adequate* lighting and ventilation for both normal and emergency use, and
- (d) Signs as required by Clause F8 “Signs”,

D2.3.3 Mechanical installations for access shall, for emergency purposes, be provided with a means of:

- (a) Calling outside help,
- (b) Releasing people safely,
- (c) Safeguarding people from exposure to *hazardous* situations, and
- (d) Allowing authorised personnel to override the normal running procedure and take exclusive control of the installation.

D2.3.4 Potentially dangerous equipment shall be located in spaces which:

- (a) Are secure from unauthorised entry and contain only equipment associated with the installation,
- (b) Are appropriately sized and suitably guarded to provide *adequate* safe working areas for maintenance personnel,
- (c) Are provided with *adequate* power and lighting for maintenance, and
- (d) Have an environment that ensures the safe operation of the equipment under all likely conditions of use.

Limits on application

Performance D2.3.3(d) shall not apply to installations travelling less than 15m vertically.

CLAUSE D2—MECHANICAL INSTALLATIONS FOR ACCESS (continued)**Provisions**

D2.3.5 Mechanical installations on *accessible routes* shall:

- (a) Where the passenger conveyor is manually controlled, provide:
- (i) controls which are easily identifiable and easy to use,
 - (ii) *adequate* notification that the passenger conveyor has registered a summoning call, and
 - (iii) *adequate* notification that the passenger conveyor has arrived, and of its future direction of travel,
- (b) Where the passenger conveyor is fully enclosed and serves more than two levels, provide an *adequate* means of informing occupants of their location,
- (c) Where appropriate, have doors which:
- (i) are power operated,
 - (ii) are readily distinguishable from their surroundings, and
 - (iii) where automatic, remain open sufficiently long to enable *people with disabilities* to pass through, and
- (d) Have *handrails* within the passenger conveyor.

Limits on application

E Moisture

CLAUSE E1—SURFACE WATER

Provisions

OBJECTIVE

E1.1 The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) Safeguard people from injury or illness, and *other property* from damage, caused by *surface water*, and
- (b) Protect the *outfalls* of drainage systems.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

E1.2 *Buildings* and *sitework* shall be constructed in a way that protects people and *other property* from the adverse effects of *surface water*.

PERFORMANCE

E1.3.1 [Except as otherwise required under the Resource Management Act 1991 for the protection of other property, *surface water*], resulting from [an event] having a 10% probability of occurring annually and which is collected or concentrated by *buildings* or *sitework*, shall be disposed of in a way that avoids the likelihood of damage or nuisance to *other property*.

E1.3.2 *Surface water*, resulting from [an event] having a 2% probability of occurring annually, shall not enter *buildings*.

E1.3.3 Drainage systems for the disposal of *surface water* shall be constructed to:

- (a) Convey *surface water* to an appropriate *outfall* using gravity flow where possible,
- (b) Avoid the likelihood of blockages,
- (c) Avoid the likelihood of leakage, penetration by roots, or the entry of ground water where pipes or lined channels are used,
- (d) Provide reasonable access for maintenance and clearing blockages,
- (e) Avoid the likelihood of damage to any *outfall*, in a manner acceptable to the *network utility operator*, and
- (f) Avoid the likelihood of damage from superimposed loads or normal ground movements.

Limits on application

Performance E1.3.2 shall apply only to *Housing, Communal Residential* and *Communal Non-residential buildings*.

Clause E1.3.1 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 3(2)(e) and (f) Building Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the words “Except as otherwise required under the Resource Management Act 1991 for the protection of other property, surface water” for the words “Surface water”.

Clause E1.3.1 was amended, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(7) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374), by substituting the words “an event” for the words “a storm”.

Clause E1.3.2 was amended, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(8) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374), by substituting the words “an event” for the words “a storm”.

[CLAUSE E2—EXTERNAL MOISTURE**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

E2.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or injury that could result from external moisture entering the *building*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

E2.2 *Buildings* must be constructed to provide adequate resistance to penetration by, and the accumulation of, moisture from the outside.

PERFORMANCE

E2.3.1 Roofs must shed precipitated moisture. In locations subject to snowfalls, roofs must also shed melted snow.

E2.3.2 Roofs and exterior walls must prevent the penetration of water that could cause undue dampness, damage to *building elements*, or both.

E2.3.3 Walls, floors, and structural elements in contact with, or in close proximity to, the ground must not absorb or transmit moisture in quantities that could cause undue dampness, damage to *building elements*, or both.

E2.3.4 *Building elements* susceptible to damage must be protected from the adverse effects of moisture entering the space below suspended floors.

E2.3.5 *Concealed spaces* and cavities in *buildings* must be constructed in a way that prevents external moisture being accumulated or transferred and causing condensation, fungal growth, or the degradation of *building elements*.

E2.3.6 Excess moisture present at the completion of *construction* must be capable of being dissipated without permanent damage to *building elements*.

Limits on application

Requirement E2.2 does not apply to *buildings* (for example, certain bus shelters, and certain *buildings* used for horticulture or for equipment for washing motor vehicles automatically) if moisture from the outside penetrating them, or accumulating within them, or both, is unlikely to impair significantly all or any of their *amenity*, durability, and stability.

Clause E2 was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 4 Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).

[CLAUSE E2—EXTERNAL MOISTURE (continued)**Provisions**

E2.3.7 *Building elements* must be constructed in a way that makes due allowance for the following:

- (a) the consequences of failure:
- (b) the effects of uncertainties resulting from *construction* or from the sequence in which different aspects of *construction* occur:
- (c) variation in the properties of materials and in the characteristics of the site.

Limits on application

[CLAUSE E3—INTERNAL MOISTURE**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

E3.1 The objective of this provision is to—

- (a) Safeguard people against illness, injury, or loss of *amenity* that could result from accumulation of internal moisture; and
- (b) Protect *household units* and other property from damage caused by free water from another *household unit* in the same *building*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

E3.2 *Buildings* must be constructed to avoid the likelihood of—

- (a) Fungal growth or the accumulation of contaminants on linings and other building elements; and
- (b) Free water overflow penetrating to an adjoining *household unit*; and
- (c) Damage to *building elements* caused by the presence of moisture.

PERFORMANCE

E3.3.1 An *adequate* combination of *thermal resistance*, ventilation, and space temperature must be provided to all *habitable spaces*, bathrooms, laundries, and other spaces where moisture may be generated or may accumulate.

E3.3.2 *Freewater* from accidental overflow from *sanitary fixtures* or *sanitary appliances* must be disposed of in a way that avoids loss of *amenity* or damage to household units or *other property*.

E3.3.3 Floor surfaces of any space containing *sanitary fixtures* or *sanitary appliances* must be *impervious* and easily cleaned.

E3.3.4 Wall surfaces adjacent to *sanitary fixtures* or *sanitary appliances* must be *impervious* and easily cleaned.

E3.3.5 Surfaces of *building elements* likely to be splashed or become contaminated in the course of the *intended use* of the *building*, must be *impervious* and easily cleaned.

E3.3.6 Surfaces of *building elements* likely to be splashed must be constructed in a way that prevents water splash from penetrating behind linings or into *concealed spaces*.

Limits on application

Performance E3.3.1 does not apply to *Communal Non-residential, Commercial, Industrial, Outbuildings, or Ancillary buildings*.

Clause E3 was substituted, as from 14 October 2004, by regulation 3 Building Amendment Regulations 2004 (SR 2004/317).

F Safety of Users

CLAUSE F1—HAZARDOUS AGENTS ON SITE

Provisions

OBJECTIVE

F1.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by *hazardous agents* or *contaminants* on a site.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

F1.2 *Buildings* shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of people within the *building* being adversely affected by *hazardous agents* or *contaminants* on the site.

PERFORMANCE

F1.3.1 Sites shall be assessed to determine the presence and potential threat of any *hazardous agents* or *contaminants*.

F1.3.2 The likely effect of any *hazardous agent* or *contaminant* on people shall be determined taking account of:

- (a) The *intended use* of the *building*,
- (b) The nature, potency or toxicity of the *hazardous agent* or *contaminant*, and,
- (c) The protection afforded by the *building* envelope and *building* systems.

Limits on application

CLAUSE F2—HAZARDOUS BUILDING MATERIALS**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

F2.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury and illness caused by exposure to *hazardous building materials*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

F2.2 *Building materials* which are potentially *hazardous*, shall be used in ways that avoid undue risk to people.

PERFORMANCE

F2.3.1 The quantities of gas, liquid, radiation or solid particles emitted by materials used in the *construction of buildings*, shall not give rise to harmful concentrations at the surface of the material where the material is exposed, or in the atmosphere of any space.

F2.3.2 Transparent panels capable of being mistaken for an unimpeded path of travel shall be marked to make them visible.

F2.3.3 Glass or other brittle materials with which people are likely to come into contact shall:

- (a) If broken on impact, break in a way which is unlikely to cause injury, or
- (b) Resist a reasonably foreseeable impact without breaking, or
- (c) Be protected from impact.

Limits on application

Performance F2.3.2 does not apply to *Housing*

CLAUSE F3—HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES AND PROCESSES**Provisions****Limits on application****OBJECTIVE**

F3.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness, and *other property* from damage, caused by *hazardous substances* or processes in *buildings*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

F3.2 *Buildings* where *hazardous substances* are stored and hazardous processes undertaken, shall be constructed to provide *adequate* protection to people and to *other property*.

PERFORMANCE

F3.3 Spaces in *buildings* where *hazardous substances* are stored, handled or used, or where hazardous processes are undertaken, shall be located and constructed to protect people, and *other property*, under both normal and reasonably foreseeable abnormal conditions, and shall be provided with:

- (a) Means of restricting unauthorised access,
- (b) Means of preventing *hazardous substances*, or other materials unacceptable to the *network utility operator*, from entering *sewers* or public *drains*,
- (c) Means of allowing the harmless release of pressure where there is a significant risk of explosion occurring,
- (d) Protected ignition sources where flammable or explosive goods are stored,
- (e) Means of rendering harmless by ventilation, containment, dilution, or chemical or biological action, any radioactive, toxic or flammable vapours, gases or materials which may escape from pipes, vessels or containers,
- (f) Impervious, easily cleaned surface finishes on *building elements* likely to be splashed or become contaminated in the course of the *intended use* of the *building*, and
- (g) Signs as required by Clause F8 "Signs".

CLAUSE F4—SAFETY FROM FALLING**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

F4.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury caused by falling.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

F4.2 *Buildings* shall be constructed to reduce the likelihood of accidental fall.

PERFORMANCE

F4.3.1 Where people could fall 1 metre or more from an opening in the external envelope or floor of a *building*, or from a sudden change of level within or associated with a *building*, a barrier shall be provided.

F4.3.2 Roofs with permanent access shall have barriers provided.

F4.3.3 Swimming pools having a depth of water exceeding 400mm, shall [have barriers provided].

F4.3.4 Barriers shall:

- (a) Be continuous and extend for the full extent of the hazard,
- (b) Be of appropriate height,
- (c) Be constructed with *adequate* rigidity,
- (d) Be of *adequate* strength to withstand the foreseeable impact of people and, where appropriate, the static pressure of people pressing against them,
- (e) Be constructed to prevent people from falling through them, and
- [(f) In the case of a swimming pool, restrict the access of children under 6 years of age to the pool or the immediate pool area.]

[(g) Restrict the passage of children under 6 years of age when provided to guard a change of level in areas likely to be frequented by them.]

Limits on application

Performance F4.3.1 shall not apply where such a barrier would be incompatible with the *intended use* of an area, or to temporary barriers on *construction* sites where the possible fall is less than 3 metres [, or to *buildings* providing pedestrian access in remote locations where the route served presents similar natural hazards].

Performance F4.3.3 shall not apply to any pool exempted under section 5 of the Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987.

[Performance F4.3.4(f) shall not apply to any pool exempted under section 5 of the Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987.]

Clause F4.3.1 was amended, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(9) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374), by adding, to the entry adjacent to clause F4.3.1 in the column headed "Limits on application", the words "or, or to buildings providing pedestrian access in remote locations where the route served presents similar natural hazards".

Clause F4.3.3 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 5(1) Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the words "have barriers provided" for the words "be constructed with a barrier to restrict access to the pool or the immediate pool area, by children under 6 years of age".

Clause F4.3.4 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 5(2) Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting para (f), inserting the text opposite para (f), and inserting para (g).

Clause F4.3.4(h) was inserted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 5 Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).

CLAUSE F4—SAFETY FROM FALLING (continued)**Provisions**

[(h) Be constructed so that they are not readily able to be used as seats.]

F4.3.5 Barriers to swimming pools shall have in addition to performance F4.3.4:

[(a) All gates and doors fitted with latching devices not readily operated by children, and constructed to automatically close and latch when released from any stationary position 150mm or more from the closed and secured position, but excluding sliding and sliding-folding doors that give access to the immediate pool surround from a *building* that forms part of the barrier, and]

(b) No permanent objects on the outside of the barrier that could provide a climbing step.

Limits on application

[Performance F4.3.4(h) does not apply to *Housing*.]

Clause F4.3.5 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 5(3) Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting para (a).

CLAUSE F5—CONSTRUCTION AND DEMOLITION HAZARDS

Provisions	Limits on application
<p>OBJECTIVE</p> <p>F5.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury, and <i>other property</i> from damage, caused by <i>construction</i> or demolition site hazards.</p> <p>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</p> <p>[F5.2] <i>Construction</i> and demolition work on buildings shall be performed in a manner that avoids the likelihood of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Objects falling onto people on or off the site, (b) Objects falling on property off the site, (c) Other hazards arising on the site affecting people off the site and <i>other property</i>, and (d) Unauthorised entry of children to hazards on the site. <p>PERFORMANCE</p> <p>F5.3.1 Suitable <i>construction</i> methods shall be used to avoid the likelihood of tools or materials falling onto places where people might be present.</p> <p>F5.3.2 Where <i>construction</i> or demolition work presents a hazard in places to which the public has access, barriers shall be provided and shall:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Be of appropriate height and <i>construction</i> to prevent site hazards from harming traffic or passersby, (b) Be difficult to climb, (c) Have no opening other than those approved by the <i>territorial authority</i> for access and viewing, (d) Have no gates or doors which project beyond the site when opened, (e) Contain no projection that would be a hazard to traffic or people, and (f) Be clearly marked where the barrier itself may otherwise present a hazard to traffic or passersby. 	

Clause F5 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 6 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the expression "F5.2" for the expression "F5" immediately under the heading "FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT".

CLAUSE F5—CONSTRUCTION AND DEMOLITION HAZARDS (continued)**Provisions**

F5.3.3 Where a *construction* or demolition site contains any hazard which might be expected to attract the unauthorised entry of children, the hazard shall be enclosed to restrict access by children.

F5.3.4 Suitable barriers shall be constructed to provide a safe route for people where lifting equipment creates a risk of accident from objects falling on a place of public access, or where a similar risk results from the height at which *construction* or demolition work is being carried out.

Limits on application

[CLAUSE F6—VISIBILITY IN ESCAPE ROUTES**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

F6.1 The objective of this provision is to help safeguard people from injury in *escape routes* during failure of the main lighting.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

F6.2 *Specified features* in *escape routes* must be made *reasonably visible* by lighting systems, other systems, or both, during failure of the main lighting.

PERFORMANCE

F6.3.1 *Specified features* in *escape routes* must, when the systems for visibility are at their design level, be *reasonably visible*.

F6.3.2 The systems for visibility must operate to the following percentages of their design levels within the following times after failure of the main lighting:

- (a) 80% in 0.5 seconds in locations (examples of which are given by performance F6.3.3) where there is a high risk of injury due to delay in operation of the systems for visibility; and
- (b) 10% in 0.5 seconds, and 80% in 30 seconds, in stairs and in locations that are unfamiliar to users; and
- (c) 10% in 20 seconds, and 80% in 60 seconds, in all other locations.

Limits on application

Requirement F6.2 does not apply to *Detached Dwellings*, *household units* within *Multi-unit Dwellings*, *Outbuildings*, *[[backcountry huts,]]* or *Ancillary buildings*.

Performance F6.3.1 does not apply to *specified features* in the initial 20 metres of an *escape route* if the risk of injury, or impediment to movement of people, due to the *specified features* not being visible is low (for example, because people are familiar with the *escape route*, the *escape route* is level, and people do not require assistance to escape).

Schedule 1 clause F6.2: amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 8 of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).

Clause F6.2 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 7(1) Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the word "Ancillary" for the word "Ancillary".

Clause F6.3.1 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 7(2) Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by inserting the words "or 30 minutes, whichever is the greater".

Clause F6 was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 6(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).

[CLAUSE F6—VISIBILITY IN ESCAPE ROUTES (continued)**Provisions**

F6.3.3 Examples of locations (referred to in performance F6.3.2(a)) where there is a high risk of injury due to delay in operation of the systems for visibility include:

- (a) areas where dangerous machinery is installed:
- (b) areas where hazardous processes take place:
- (c) clinical areas of hospitals:
- (d) prisons and other *buildings* in which people are detained:
- (e) any part of an *escape route* designed for use at any time by more than 250 people.

F6.3.4 The systems for visibility must operate continuously in *buildings* or parts of *buildings* in the following risk groups for the following periods after failure of the main lighting:

- (a) *risk group A*, until restoration of the main lighting system:
- (b) *risk group B*, 90 minutes:
- (c) *risk group C*, 30 minutes.

F6.3.5 Despite performance F6.3.4, if a *building* or part of a *building* falls into both *risk group A* and *risk group B*, the systems for visibility must operate for whichever is the longer of the periods specified in performance F6.3.4(a) and (b).

F6.3.6 Signs to indicate *escape routes* must be provided as required by Clause F8“Signs”.

Limits on application

CLAUSE F7—WARNING SYSTEMS**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

F7.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness due to lack of awareness of an emergency.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

F7.2 *Buildings* shall be provided with appropriate means of warning people to escape to a *safe place* [in an emergency].

PERFORMANCE

F7.3.1 A means of warning must alert people to the emergency in *adequate* time for them to reach a *safe place*.

F7.3.2 Appropriate means of detection and warning for *fire* must be provided within each *household unit*.

F7.3.3 Appropriate means of warning for *fire* and other emergencies must be provided in *buildings* as necessary to satisfy the other performance requirements of this code.

Limits on application

Performance F7.3 does not apply to *Out-buildings*[, *backcountry huts*.] or *Ancillary buildings*.

Clause F7.2 was amended, as from 24 April 2003, by regulation 3(1) Buildings Amendment Regulations (SR 2003/61) by adding the words “in an emergency”.

Clause F7.3 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 8 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the word “Ancillary” for the word “Ancilliary”.

Clause F7.3 was substituted, as from 24 April 2003, by regulation 3(2) Buildings Amendment Regulations (SR 2003/61).

Schedule 1 clause F7.3.1: amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 9 of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).

[CLAUSE F8—SIGNS**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

F8.1 The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) safeguard people from injury or illness resulting from inadequate identification of *escape routes*, or of hazards within or about the *building*,
- (b) safeguard people from loss of *amenity* due to inadequate direction, and
- (c) ensure that *people with disabilities* are able to carry out normal activities and processes within *buildings*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

F8.2 Signs must be provided in and about *buildings* to identify:

- (a) *escape routes*,
- (b) emergency related safety features,
- (c) potential hazards, and
- (d) *accessible routes* and facilities for *people with disabilities*.

PERFORMANCE

F8.3.1 Signs must be *clearly visible* and readily understandable under all conditions of foreseeable use, including emergency conditions.

F8.3.2 Signs identifying potential hazards must be provided and located so that people encounter the signs before encountering the potential hazard

F8.3.3 Signs to facilitate escape to a *place of safety* must be provided and

- (a) be located to identify the *escape routes*, and
- (b) continue to meet the performance requirements in clause F8.3.1 during failure of the main lighting for the period required by performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5.

F8.3.4 Signs must be provided and located to identify *accessible routes* and facilities provided for *people with disabilities*.

F8.3.4 *Accessible routes* must be identified with the International Symbol of Access.

Limits on application

Objective F8.1(c) applies only to those *buildings* to which section 118 of the Building Act 2004 applies.

Requirement F8.2 does not apply to *detached dwellings*, or within *household units in multi-unit dwellings*.

Schedule 1 clause F8: replaced, on 10 April 2012, by regulation 7 of the Building (Building Code: Fire Safety and Signs) Amendment Regulations 2012 (SR 2012/33).

G Services and Facilities

CLAUSE G1—PERSONAL HYGIENE

Provisions

OBJECTIVE

G1.1 The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) Safeguard people from illness caused by infection or contamination,
- (b) Safeguard people from loss of *amenity* arising from the absence of appropriate personal hygiene facilities, and
- (c) Ensure *people with disabilities* are able to carry out normal activities and processes within *buildings*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G1.2 *Buildings* shall be provided with appropriate spaces and facilities for personal hygiene.

PERFORMANCE

G1.3.1 *Sanitary fixtures* shall be provided in sufficient number and be appropriate for the people who are intended to use them.

G1.3.2 *Sanitary fixtures* shall be located, constructed and installed to:

- (a) Facilitate *sanitation*,
- (b) Avoid risk of food contamination,
- (c) Avoid harbouring dirt or germs,
- (d) Provide appropriate privacy,
- (e) Avoid affecting occupants of adjacent spaces from the presence of unpleasant odours, accumulation of offensive matter, or other source of annoyance,
- (f) Allow effective cleaning,
- (g) Discharge to a plumbing and drainage system as required by clause G13 “Foul water” when water-borne disposal is used, and
- (h) Provide a healthy safe disposal system when non-water-borne disposal is used.

G1.3.3 Facilities for personal hygiene shall be provided in convenient locations.

G1.3.4 Personal hygiene facilities provided for *people with disabilities* shall be *accessible*.

Limits on application

Objective G1.1(c) shall apply only to those *buildings* to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Performance G1.3.4 shall not apply to *Housing, Outbuildings, [backcountry huts,] Ancillary buildings, and to Industrial buildings* where no more than 10 people are employed.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

The limits on application to clause G1.1(c) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975”.

Schedule 1 clause G1.3.4: amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 10 of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).

CLAUSE G2—LAUNDERING

Provisions

OBJECTIVE

G2.1 The objective of this provision is to ensure:

- (a) *Adequate amenities* for people to do laundering, and
- (b) That *people with disabilities* are able to carry out normal activities and processes within *buildings*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G2.2 *Buildings* shall be provided with *adequate* space and facilities for laundering.

PERFORMANCE

G2.3.1 Facilities shall have capacity for the *intended use*, and consist of *fixtures*, or space and services for appliances.

G2.3.2 Space shall be *adequate* in size to provide for the installation and use of *fixtures* or appliances.

G2.3.3 Space and facilities shall be provided within each accommodation unit or may be grouped elsewhere in a convenient location.

G2.3.4 *Accessible* facilities shall be provided for *people with disabilities*.

Limits on application

Objective G2.1(b) shall apply to those *buildings* to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Requirement G2.2 shall apply only to *Housing*, old people’s homes, early childhood centres, camping grounds and work camps.

Performance G2.3.4 shall apply only to camping grounds.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

The limits on application to clause G2.1(b) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975”.

CLAUSE G3—FOOD PREPARATION AND PREVENTION OF CONTAMINATION**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G3.1 The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) Safeguard people from illness due to contamination,
- (b) Enable hygienic food preparation without loss of *amenity*, and
- (c) Ensure that *people with disabilities* are able to carry out normal activities and processes within *buildings*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G3.2.1 *Buildings* shall be provided with space and facilities for the hygienic storage, preparation and cooking of food, that are *adequate* for the *intended use* of the *building*.

G3.2.2 *Buildings* used for the storage, manufacture or processing of food, including animal products, shall be constructed to safeguard the contents from contamination.

[G3.2.3] *Buildings* used for the medical treatment of humans or animals, or the reception of dead bodies, shall be constructed to avoid the spread of contamination from the *building* contents.

PERFORMANCE

G3.3.1 Food preparation facilities shall be hygienic and include:

- (a) Space for a refrigerator, or a perishable food storage area capable of being cooled and protected from vermin and insects,
- (b) Means for food rinsing, utensil washing and waste water disposal,
- (c) Means for cooking food, and
- (d) Space and a surface for food preparation.

Limits on application

Objective G3.1(c) shall apply only to those *buildings* to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Requirement G3.2.1 shall apply to *Housing*, work camps, old people's homes and early childhood centres, and where appropriate shall also apply to *Commercial* and *Industrial buildings* whose intended uses include the manufacture, preparation, packaging or storage of food.

Performance G3.3.1(a) and (b) shall apply to *Housing*, work camps, old people's homes, early childhood centres and *Commercial* or *Industrial buildings* whose *intended uses* include the handling of perishable food.

Performance G3.3.1(c) shall apply to *Housing*, work camps, old people's homes and early childhood centres.

Performance G3.3.1(d) shall apply to *Housing*, work camps, old people's homes and early childhood centres.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

Clause G3 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 9 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the expression "G3.2.3" for the expression "G3.2.2" where it secondly occurred under the heading "FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT".

The limits on application to clause G3.1(c) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression "section 47A of the Act" for the expression "section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975".

CLAUSE G3—FOOD PREPARATION AND PREVENTION OF CONTAMINATION (continued)**Provisions**

G3.3.2 Spaces for food preparation and utensil washing shall have:

- (a) Interior linings and work surfaces shall be *impervious* and easily cleaned,
- (b) All *building elements* constructed with materials which are free from *hazardous substances* which could cause contamination to the *building contents*, and

(c) Exposed *building elements* located and shaped to avoid the accumulation of dirt.

G3.3.3 An *adequate* energy supply shall be provided, appropriately located for use by cooking and refrigeration appliances.

G3.3.4 Space and facilities shall be provided within each *household unit*, or grouped elsewhere in a convenient location.

G3.3.5 Where facilities are provided for *people with disabilities* they shall be *accessible*.

G3.3.6 Spaces in *buildings* shall be protected from the likelihood of contamination or vermin entering areas used for the storage, processing or preparation of food, and shall have a means of preventing contamination spreading from these areas to other spaces.

Limits on application

Performance G3.3.2(b) shall apply to *Housing*, work camps, old people's homes and early childhood centres, and where appropriate shall also apply to *Commercial* and *Industrial buildings* whose *intended uses* include the manufacture, preparation, packaging or storage of food.

Performance G3.3.2(c) shall not apply to *Housing*.

Performance G3.3.5 shall apply only to camping grounds and *accessible accommodation units* in *Communal Residential buildings*.

Performance G3.3.6 shall apply to *Commercial* or *Industrial buildings* whose *intended uses* include the handling of perishable food, the medical treatment of humans or animals, the slaughter of animals or the reception of dead bodies.

CLAUSE G4—VENTILATION**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G4.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or loss of *amenity* due to lack of fresh air.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G4.2 Spaces within *buildings* shall be provided with *adequate* ventilation consistent with their maximum occupancy [and their intended use].

PERFORMANCE

G4.3.1 Spaces within *buildings* shall have means of ventilation with *outdoor air* that will provide an *adequate* number of air changes to maintain air purity.

G4.3.2 Mechanical air-handling systems shall be constructed and maintained in a manner that prevents harmful bacteria, pathogens and allergens from multiplying within them.

G4.3.3 *Buildings* shall have a means of collecting or otherwise removing the following products from the spaces in which they are generated:

- (a) Cooking fumes and odours,
- (b) [Moisture] from laundering, utensil washing, bathing and showering,
- (c) Odours from sanitary and waste storage spaces,
- (d) Gaseous by-products and excessive moisture from commercial or industrial processes,
- (e) Poisonous fumes and gases,
- (f) Flammable fumes and gases,
- (g) Airborne particles,
- (h) Bacteria, viruses or other pathogens, or
- (i) Products of combustion.

G4.3.4 Contaminated air shall be disposed of in a way which avoids creating a nuisance or hazard to people and *other property*.

G4.3.5 The quantities of air supplied for ventilation shall meet the additional demands of any fixed *combustion appliances*.

Limits on application

Clause G4.2 Schedule was amended, as from 11 September 1997, by regulation 3(1) Building Amendment Regulations 1997 (SR 1997/156) by inserting the words “and their intended use”.

Clause G4.3.3(b) Schedule was amended, as from 11 September 1997, by regulation 3(1) Building Amendment Regulations 1997 (SR 1997/156) by substituting the word “Moisture” for the word “Steam”.

CLAUSE G5—INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G5.1 The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) Safeguard people from illness caused by low air temperature,
- (b) Safeguard people from injury or loss of *amenity* caused by inadequate activity space,
- (c) Safeguard people from injury caused by unsafe installations, and
- (d) Ensure that *people with disabilities* are able to carry out normal activities and processes within *buildings*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G5.2.1 *Buildings* shall be constructed to provide:

- (a) An *adequate*, controlled interior temperature,
- (b) *Adequate* activity space for the *intended use*, and
- (c) Accessible spaces and facilities.

G5.2.2 Heating appliances in *buildings* shall be installed in a way that reduces the likelihood of injury.

PERFORMANCE

G5.3.1 *Habitable spaces*, bathrooms and recreation rooms shall have provision for maintaining the internal temperature at no less than 16°C measured at 750mm above floor level, while the space is *adequately* ventilated.

G5.3.2 Heating appliances, and any attached cables, pipes or other fittings shall be securely fixed in place.

G5.3.3 *Habitable spaces* shall have sufficient space for activity, furniture, and sanitary and mobility aids.

G5.3.4 Where reception counters or desks are provided for public use, at least one counter or desk shall be *accessible*.

Limits on application

Objective G5.1(d) shall apply to those *buildings* to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Requirement G5.2.1(a) shall apply only to *habitable spaces*, bathrooms and recreation rooms in old people's homes and early childhood centres.

Requirement G5.2.1(b) shall apply only to [*old people's homes*].

Requirement G5.2.1(c) shall apply only to *Communal Residential, Communal Non-residential, and Commercial buildings*.

Performance G5.3.1 shall apply only to old people's homes and early childhood centres.

Performance G5.3.2 shall apply only to old people's homes and early childhood centres.

Performance G5.3.3 shall apply only to old people's homes.

Performance G5.3.4 applies only to *Communal Residential, Communal Non-Residential, and Commercial buildings*.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

Clause G5 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 10 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the expression "old people's homes" for the expression "old people's homes" in italics in the second column, opposite clause G5.2.1(b)

The limits on application to clause G5.1(d) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression "section 47A of the Act" for the expression "section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975".

CLAUSE G5—INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT (continued)**Provisions**

G5.3.5 *Buildings* shall be provided with listening systems which enable enhanced hearing by people with hearing aids.

G5.3.6 Enhanced listening systems shall be identified by signs complying with Clause F8 "Signs".

Limits on application

Performance G5.3.5 applies only to:

- (a) *Communal Non-Residential* assembly spaces occupied by more than 250 people, and
- (b) Any theatre, cinema, or public hall, and
- (c) Assembly spaces in old people's homes occupied by more than 20 people.

CLAUSE G6—AIRBORNE AND IMPACT SOUND**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G6.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or loss of *amenity* as a result of undue noise being transmitted between abutting occupancies.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G6.2 *Building elements* which are common between occupancies, shall be constructed to prevent undue noise transmission from other occupancies or common spaces, to the *habitable spaces of household units*.

PERFORMANCE

G6.3.1 The *Sound Transmission Class* of walls, floors and ceilings, shall be no less than 55.

G6.3.2 The *Impact Insulation Class* of floors shall be no less than 55.

Limits on application

CLAUSE G7—NATURAL LIGHT**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G7.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or loss of *amenity* due to isolation from natural light and the outside environment.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G7.2 *Habitable spaces* shall provide *adequate* openings for natural light and for a visual awareness of the outside environment.

PERFORMANCE

G7.3.1 Natural light shall provide an *illuminance* of no less than 30 lux at floor level for 75 percent of the *standard year*.

G7.3.2 Openings to give awareness of the outside shall be transparent and provided in suitable locations.

Limits on application

Requirement G7.2 shall apply only to *Housing*, old people's homes and early childhood centres.

CLAUSE G8—ARTIFICIAL LIGHT**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G8.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury due to lack of *adequate* lighting.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G8.2 Spaces within *buildings* used by people, shall be provided with *adequate* artificial lighting which, when activated in the absence of sufficient natural light, will enable safe movement.

PERFORMANCE

G8.3 *Illuminance* at floor level shall be no less than 20 lux.

Limits on application

Requirement G8.2 shall apply to:

- (a) All *exitways* in *Multi-unit Dwellings*, *Group Dwellings* and *Communal Residential* [(except *backcountry huts*)], *Communal Non-residential*, *Commercial* and *Industrial buildings*,
- (b) All *access routes* except those in *Outbuildings* [, *backcountry huts*,] and Ancillary buildings, and
- (c) All common spaces within *Multi-unit Dwellings*, *Group Dwellings*, and *Communal Residential* [(except *backcountry huts*)] and *Communal Non-residential buildings*.

[Performance G8.3 does not apply during a failure of the main lighting, when the requirements in Clause F6 “Visibility in escape routes” apply.]

Schedule 1 clause G8.2 paragraph (a): amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 11(1) of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).

Schedule 1 clause G8.2 paragraph (b): amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 11(2) of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).

Schedule 1 clause G8.2 paragraph (c): amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 11(3) of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).

Clause G8.3 was amended, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 6(5) Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124) by substituting the limit on application.

CLAUSE G9—ELECTRICITY**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G9.1 The objective of this provision is to ensure that:

- (a) In *buildings* supplied with electricity, the *electrical installation* has safeguards against outbreak of *fire* and personal injury, and
- (b) *People with disabilities* are able to carry out normal activities and processes within *buildings*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G9.2 Where provided in a *building*, *electrical installations* shall be safe for their *intended use*.

PERFORMANCE

G9.3.1 The *electrical installation* shall incorporate systems to:

- (a) Protect people from contact with parts of the installation which are live during normal operation, and to prevent parts of the installation or other *building elements* becoming live during fault conditions,
- (b) Permit the safe isolation of the installation and of electrical fittings and appliances,
- (c) Safeguard people from excessive temperatures resulting from either normal operation of electrical equipment, or from currents which could exceed the installation rating,
- (d) Safeguard people from injury which may result from electromechanical stress in electrical components caused by currents in excess of the installation rating,
- (e) Protect *building elements* from risk of ignition, impairment of their physical or mechanical properties, or function, due to temperature increases resulting from heat transfer or electric arc,
- (f) Operate safely in its intended environment, and
- (g) Safeguard against ignition of the surrounding atmosphere where it is potentially flammable or explosive.

Limits on application

Objective G9.1(b) shall apply only to those *buildings* to which [section 47A of the Act] applies.

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

The limits on application to clause G9.1(b) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression "section 47A of the Act" for the expression "section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975".

CLAUSE G9—ELECTRICITY (continued)**Provisions**

G9.3.2 An *electrical installation* supplying an essential service shall:

- (a) Maintain the supply for a time appropriate to that service, and
- (b) Be capable of being isolated from the supply system, independently of the remainder of the installation.

G9.3.3 An *electrical installation* connected to an *electrical supply system*, shall contain safeguards which protect the safety features of the external supply.

G9.3.4 In *buildings* intended for use by *people with disabilities*, light switches and plug socket outlets shall be *accessible* and usable.

Limits on application

Performance G9.3.4 shall not apply to Housing, *Outbuildings*, *Ancillary buildings*, and to *Industrial buildings* where no more than 10 people are employed.

CLAUSE G10—PIPED SERVICES**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G10.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by extreme temperatures or *hazardous substances* associated with *building services*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G10.2 In *buildings* provided with potentially *hazardous services* containing hot, cold, flammable, corrosive or toxic fluids, the installations shall be constructed to provide *adequate safety* for people.

PERFORMANCE

G10.3.1 Piping systems shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of:

- (a) Significant leakage or damage during normal or reasonably foreseeable abnormal conditions,
- (b) Detrimental contamination of the contents by other substances,
- (c) Adverse interaction between services, or between piping and electrical systems, and
- (d) People having contact with pipes which could cause them harm.

G10.3.2 Provision shall be made for the ready removal of moisture or condensate in gas pipes.

G10.3.3 Pipes shall be protected against corrosion in the environment of their use.

G10.3.4 Piping systems shall be identified with markings if the contents are not readily apparent from the location or associated equipment.

G10.3.5 Enclosed spaces shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of accumulating vented or leaking gas.

G10.3.6 Piped systems shall have isolation devices which permit the installation or individual items of apparatus to be isolated from the supply system, for maintenance, testing, fault detection and repair.

Limits on application

CLAUSE G11—GAS AS AN ENERGY SOURCE**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G11.1 The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) Safeguard people from injury arising from the use of gas as an energy source,
- (b) Safeguard people and *other property* from the risk of *fire* or explosion, and
- (c) Safeguard people from loss of *amenity* due to the gas supply being inadequate for the *intended use*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G11.2 In *buildings* where gas is used as an energy source, the supply system shall be safe and *adequate* for its *intended use*.

PERFORMANCE

G11.3.1 Supply systems shall be constructed to maintain a safe pressure range appropriate to the appliances and the type of gas used.

G11.3.2 The gas supply to all appliances in a single ventilated space, shall be fitted with an automatic cut-off activated by failure of any continuous forced ventilation system used for combustion, ventilation or safe operation of a fixed gas appliance.

G11.3.3 A flued fixed gas appliance shall have no adverse interaction with any other flued appliance.

G11.3.4 Supply systems shall have isolation devices which permit the whole installation, or individual items of apparatus, to be isolated from the supply for maintenance, testing, fault detection or repair.

G11.3.5 Where gas is supplied from an external source, the supply system within *buildings* shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of:

- (a) Contamination of the external supply from other gas sources within the *building*,
- (b) Adverse effects on the pressure of the external supply, and
- (c) The external supply pipe acting as an earthing conductor.

G11.3.6 The location and installation of meters and service risers shall meet the requirements of the *network utility operator*.

Limits on application

[CLAUSE G12—WATER SUPPLIES**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G12.1 The objective of this provision is to—

- (a) safeguard people from illness or injury caused by contaminated water:
- (b) safeguard people from injury caused by hot water system explosion, or from contact with excessively hot water:
- (c) safeguard people from loss of *amenity* arising from—
 - (i) a lack of hot water for personal hygiene; or
 - (ii) water for human consumption that is offensive in appearance, odour, or taste:
- (d) ensure that *people with disabilities* are able to carry out normal activities and functions within *buildings*.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G12.2 *Buildings* provided with water outlets, *sanitary fixtures*, or *sanitary appliances* must have safe and *adequate* water supplies.

PERFORMANCE

G12.3.1 Water intended for human consumption, food preparation, utensil washing, or oral hygiene must be potable

G12.3.2 A potable *water supply system* must be—

- (a) protected from contamination; and
- (b) installed in a manner that avoids the likelihood of contamination within the system and the *water main*; and
- (c) installed using components that will not contaminate the water.

G12.3.3 A non-potable *water supply system* used for personal hygiene must be installed in a manner that avoids the likelihood of illness or injury being caused by the system.

G12.3.4 Water pipes and outlets provided with non-potable water must be clearly identified.

Limits on application

Objective G12.1(d) applies only to those *buildings* to which section 47A of the Act applies.

[[Performance G12.3.1 does not apply to *backcountry huts*.]]

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

Clause G12 was substituted, as from 3 January 2002, by regulation 3(10) Building Amendment Regulations 2001 (SR 2001/374).

Schedule 1 clause G12.3.1: amended, on 31 October 2008, by regulation 12 of the Building (Building Code: Backcountry Huts) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/358).

The limits on application to clause G12.1(d) were amended consequential on the Health Reforms (Transitional Provisions) Act 1993, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 4(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119), by substituting the expression “section 47A of the Act” for the expression “section 25 of the Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975”.

CLAUSE G12—WATER SUPPLIES (continued)**Provisions**

G12.3.5 *Sanitary fixtures and sanitary appliances* must be provided with hot water when intended to be used for—

- (a) utensil washing; and
- (b) personal washing, showering, or bathing

G12.3.6 If hot water is provided to *sanitary fixtures* and *sanitary appliances* used for personal hygiene, it must be delivered at a temperature that avoids the likelihood of scalding.

G12.3.7 *Water supply systems* must be installed in a manner that—

- (a) pipes water to *sanitary fixtures* and *sanitary appliances* at flow rates that are *adequate* for the correct functioning of those *fixtures* and *appliances* under normal conditions; and
- (b) avoids the likelihood of leakage; and
- (c) allows reasonable access to components likely to need maintenance; and
- (d) allows the system and any backflow prevention devices to be isolated for testing and maintenance.

G12.3.8 Vessels used for producing or storing hot water must be provided with safety features that—

- (a) relieve excessive pressure during both normal and abnormal conditions; and
- (b) limit temperatures to avoid the likelihood of flash steam production in the event of rupture.

G12.3.9 A *hot water system* must be capable of being controlled to prevent the growth of legionella bacteria.

G12.3.10 Water supply taps must be *accessible* and usable for *people with disabilities*.

Limits on application

Performance G12.3.5(b) applies to only *housing*, retirement homes, and early childhood centres.

Performance G12.3.10 applies only to those *buildings* to which section 47A of the Act applies.]

Note: Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.

Clause G12.3.7 was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 11 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the word “legionella” for the word “legionella”.

CLAUSE G13—FOUL WATER**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G13.1 The objective of this provision is to:

- (a) Safeguard people from illness due to infection or contamination resulting from personal hygiene activities, and
- (b) Safeguard people from loss of *amenity* due to the presence of unpleasant odours or the accumulation of offensive matter resulting from *foul water* disposal.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

[G13.2 *Buildings* in which *sanitary fixtures* and *sanitary appliances* using water-borne waste disposal are installed must be provided with—]

[(a) an *adequate* plumbing and drainage system to carry *foul water* to appropriate outfalls; and]

[(b) if no *sewer* is available, an *adequate* system for the storage, treatment, and disposal of *foul water*.]

PERFORMANCE

G13.3.1 The *plumbing system* shall be constructed to:

- (a) Convey *foul water* from *buildings* to a drainage system,
- (b) Avoid the likelihood of blockage and leakage,
- (c) Avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases entering *buildings*, and
- (d) provide reasonable access for maintenance and clearing blockages.

G13.3.2 The drainage system shall:

- (a) Convey *foul water* to an appropriate *outfall*,
- (b) Be constructed to avoid the likelihood of blockage,
- (c) Be supported, jointed and protected in a way that will avoid the likelihood of penetration of roots or the entry of ground water,
- (d) Be provided with reasonable access for maintenance and clearing blockages,

Limits on application

Clause G13.2 was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 7(1) Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).

CLAUSE G13—FOUL WATER (continued)**Provisions**

(e) Be ventilated to avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases accumulating in the drainage system and *sewer*, and

(f) Be constructed to avoid the likelihood of damage from superimposed loads or normal ground movement.

G13.3.3 Where a *sewer* connection is available, the drainage system shall be connected to the *sewer*, and the connection shall be made in a manner that avoids damage to the *sewer* and is to the approval of the *network utility operator*.

[G13.3.4 If no *sewer* is available, facilities for the storage, treatment, and disposal of *foul water* must be constructed—]

[(a) with *adequate* capacity for the volume of *foul water* and the frequency of disposal; and]

[(b) with *adequate* vehicle access for collection if required; and]

[(c) to avoid the likelihood of contamination of any potable water supplies in compliance with Clause G12 “Water supplies”; and]

[(d) to avoid the likelihood of contamination of soils, ground water, and waterways except as permitted under the Resource Management Act 1991; and]

[(e) from materials that are impervious both to the *foul water* for which disposal is required, and to water; and]

[(f) to avoid the likelihood of blockage and leakage; and]

[(g) to avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases accumulating within or entering into *buildings*; and]

[(h) to avoid the likelihood of unauthorised access by people; and]

[(i) to permit easy cleaning and maintenance; and]

[(j) to avoid the likelihood of damage from superimposed loads or normal ground movement; and]

[(k) if those facilities are buried underground, to resist hydrostatic uplift pressures.]

Limits on application

Clause G13.3.4 was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 7(2) Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).

CLAUSE G14—INDUSTRIAL LIQUID WASTE**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G14.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by infection or contamination resulting from industrial liquid waste.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G14.2 *Buildings*, in which industrial liquid waste is generated shall be provided with *adequate* spaces and facilities for the safe and hygienic collection, holding, treatment and disposal of the waste.

PERFORMANCE

G14.3.1 Industrial liquid waste shall be conveyed to storage containers and within disposal systems in a way which will:

- (a) Transfer wastes from *buildings* safely and hygienically,
- (b) Avoid the likelihood of blockage and leakage,
- (c) Avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases entering *buildings*, and
- (d) Provide reasonable access for clearing of blockages.

[G14.3.2 Facilities for the storage, treatment, and disposal of industrial liquid waste must be constructed—]

[(a) with adequate capacity for the volume of waste and the frequency of disposal; and]

[(b) with *adequate* vehicle access for collection if required; and]

[(c) to avoid the likelihood of contamination of any potable water supplies in compliance with Clause G12 “Water supplies”; and]

[(d) to avoid the likelihood of contamination of soils, ground water, and waterways except as permitted under the Resource Management Act 1991; and]

[(e) from materials that are impervious both to the waste for which disposal is required, and to water; and]

[(f) to avoid the likelihood of blockage and leakage; and]

Limits on application

Clause G14.3.2. (d) was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 12 Building Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by omitting the words “by a resource consent given”.

Clause G14.3.2 was substituted, as from 21 June 2007, by regulation 8 Building Amendment Regulations 2007 (SR 2007/124).

CLAUSE G14—INDUSTRIAL LIQUID WASTE (continued)

Provisions

[(g) to avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases accumulating within or entering into *buildings*; and]

[(h) to avoid the likelihood of unauthorised access by people; and]

[(i) to permit easy cleaning and maintenance; and]

[(j) to avoid the likelihood of damage from superimposed loads or normal ground movement; and]

[(k) if those facilities are buried underground, to resist hydrostatic uplift pressures.]

Limits on application

CLAUSE G15—SOLID WASTE**Provisions****OBJECTIVE**

G15.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by infection or contamination from solid waste.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G15.2 *Buildings* shall be provided with space and facilities for the collection, and safe hygienic holding prior to disposal, of solid waste arising from the *intended use* of the *buildings*.

PERFORMANCE

G15.3.1 Where provision is made within *buildings* for the collection and temporary holding of solid waste, the spaces provided shall be:

- (a) Of sufficient size for the volume of waste and frequency of disposal,
- (b) Provided with reasonable access for the depositing and collection of the waste,
- (c) Capable of maintaining sanitary conditions having regard to the types of waste and storage containers, and
- (d) Capable of maintaining the appropriate temperature for the type of waste stored.

G15.3.2 Where a rubbish chute is provided, it shall be located and constructed to:

- (a) Convey the solid waste to an appropriate storage container,
- (b) Avoid the likelihood of blockage or leakage,
- (c) Permit easy cleaning and maintenance,
- (d) Avoid the likelihood of foul air or gases accumulating or entering the *building*,
- (e) Avoid the likelihood of the spread of *fire* beyond the refuse chute,
- (f) Have openings that allow waste to be [safely] deposited in the chute, and
- (g) Restrict access by children, animals and vermin.

G15.3.3 Where it is acceptable to the *network utility operator*, solid waste which has been suitably treated for disposal to a *sewer* may be discharged via a *foul water drain* complying with Clause G13 "Foul water".

Limits on application

Requirement G15.2 shall not apply to *Detached Dwellings*, *household units* of *Multi-unit Dwellings*, *Outbuildings* or *Ancillary buildings* if there is independent access or private open space at ground level.

Clause G15.3.2(f) was amended, as from 22 December 1994, by regulation 13 Buildings Regulations 1992, Amendment No 1 (SR 1994/263) by substituting the word "safely" for the word "safety".

H Energy Efficiency

[CLAUSE H1—ENERGY EFFICIENCY PROVISIONS

Provisions

OBJECTIVE

H1.1 The objective of this provision is to facilitate efficient use of energy.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

H1.2 *Buildings* must be *constructed* to achieve an adequate degree of energy efficiency when that energy is used for—

[[(a) modifying temperature, modifying humidity, providing ventilation, or doing all or any of those things; or]]

(b) providing hot water to [[and from]] *sanitary fixtures* or *sanitary appliances*, or both; or

(c) providing artificial lighting

PERFORMANCE

H1.3.1 The *building* envelope enclosing spaces where the temperature or humidity (or both) are modified must be constructed to—

(a) provide *adequate thermal resistance*; and

(b) limit uncontrollable airflow.

H1.3.2 ...

[[**H1.3.2A** ...

[[**H1.3.2B** ...

[[**[H1.3.2C]** ...

[[**[H1.3.2D]** ...

[[**[H1.3.2E** *Buildings* must be constructed to ensure that their *building performance index* does not exceed 1.55.]

H1.3.3 Account must be taken of physical conditions likely to affect energy performance of *buildings*, including—

(a) the thermal mass of *building elements*; and

(b) the building orientation and shape; and

(c) the airtightness of the *building* envelope; and

Limits on application

Objective H 1.1 applies only when the energy is sourced from a *network utility operator* or a depletable energy resource.

[[Requirement H1.2(a) does not apply to *assembly service buildings*, *industrial buildings*, *outbuildings*, or *ancillary buildings*.]]

Requirement H1.2(c) applies only to *commercial buildings* and *communal non-residential buildings* whose floor area is greater than 300 m².

[Performance H1.3.2E applies only to *Housing*.]]]

Clause H1 was substituted, as from 29 December 2000, by regulation 5 Building Amendment Regulations 2000 (SR 2000/119).

Schedule 1 clause H1.2(a): substituted, on 1 February 2009, by regulation 5 of the Building (Building Code: Energy Efficiency of Temperature, Humidity, and Ventilation Systems) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/97).

Schedule 1 clause H1.2(b): amended, on 1 February 2009, by regulation 4 of the Building (Building Code: Energy Efficiency of Domestic Hot Water Systems) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2009/256).

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2: revoked, on 31 October 2007, by regulation 5 of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2A: revoked, on 30 June 2008, by regulation 6 of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).

CLAUSE H1—ENERGY EFFICIENCY PROVISIONS (continued)

Provisions	Limits on application
<p>(d) the heat gains from services, processes and occupants; and</p> <p>(e) the local climate; and</p> <p>(f) heat gains from solar radiation.</p>	
<p>[[H1.3.4 Systems for the heating, storage, or distribution of hot water to and from <i>sanitary fixtures</i> or <i>sanitary appliances</i> must, having regard to the energy source used,—]]</p>	<p>[[Performance H1.3.4(b) does not apply to individual storage vessels that are greater than 700 litres in capacity.]]</p>
<p>[[a) limit the energy lost in the heating process; and]]</p>	<p>[[Performance H1.3.4(c) applies only to <i>housing</i>.]]</p>
<p>[[b) be constructed to limit heat losses from storage vessels and from distribution systems; and]]</p>	<p>Performance H1.3.5 does not apply to lighting provided solely to meet the requirements of clause F6.</p>
<p>[[c) be constructed to facilitate the efficient use of hot water.]]</p>	
<p>H1.3.5 Artificial lighting fixtures must—</p>	
<p>(a) be located and sized to limit energy use, consistent with the <i>intended use</i> of space; and</p>	
<p>(b) be fitted with a means to enable light intensities to be reduced, consistent with reduced activity in the space.</p>	
<p>[[H1.3.6 HVAC systems must be located, constructed, and installed to—]]</p>	<p>[[Performance H1.3.6 applies only to <i>commercial buildings</i>.]]</p>
<p>[[a) limit energy use, consistent with the <i>intended use</i> of space; and]]</p>	
<p>[[b) enable them to be maintained to ensure their use of energy remains limited, consistent with the <i>intended use</i> of space.]]</p>	

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2B: revoked, on 30 June 2008, by regulation 6 of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2C: revoked, on 30 September 2008, by regulation 7(1) of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2C: inserted, on 30 June 2008, by regulation 6 of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2D: revoked, on 30 September 2008, by regulation 7(1) of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2D: inserted, on 30 June 2008, by regulation 6 of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.2E: inserted, on 30 September 2008, by regulation 7(1) of the Building Amendment Regulations (No 2) 2007 (SR 2007/226).

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.4: substituted, on 1 February 2009, by regulation 5 of the Building (Building Code: Energy Efficiency of Domestic Hot Water Systems) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2009/256).

Schedule 1 clause H1.3.6: added, on 1 February 2009, by regulation 6 of the Building (Building Code: Energy Efficiency of Temperature, Humidity, and Ventilation Systems) Amendment Regulations 2008 (SR 2008/97).

Publications Referenced in Handbook, Compliance Schedule Handbook, Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods

Amend 13
Feb 2014

For the purposes of New Zealand Building Code compliance, acceptable reference documents include only the quoted edition and specific amendments as listed below.

Dates in brackets indicate that the Standard was reviewed and reissued without change that year.

Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods in which the particular references are quoted are identified by the relevant Building Code Clause and the number of the Verification Method or Acceptable Solution.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

For example: **B1/VM1/AS3** indicates that the reference occurs in Verification Method 1, and Acceptable Solution 3 for Clause B1 Structure.

Where references are quoted in the Compliance Schedule Handbook, these are identified by the letters HB and the relevant section. For example: HB/SS 3 indicates that the reference occurs in the content guide for SS 3 in the Compliance Schedule Handbook.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Places where the reference documents are quoted, are more specifically identified by paragraph or table, in the reference list contained in each Acceptable Solution and Verification Method.

Contents

Page

Standards New Zealand	79
Standards Australia	91
British Standards Institution	95
New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)	98
Australian Publications (other than Standards)	100
Australia/New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)	100
British Publications (other than Standards)	101
International Publications	101
US Publications	103

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Where quoted

Standards New Zealand

NZS/BS 21: 1985 Specification for pipe threads for tubes and fittings where pressure-tight joints are made on the threads (metric dimensions)
Amend: 1

G10/AS1, G14/VM1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

NZS/BS 476:- Fire tests on building materials and structures

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Part 21: 1987 Methods for determination of the fire resistance of loadbearing elements of construction

C/AS1-C/AS6

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Part 22: 1987 Methods for determination of the fire resistance of non-loadbearing elements of construction

C/AS1-C/AS6

NZS/BS 970:- Specification for wrought steels for mechanical and allied engineering purposes

Part 1: 1991 General inspection and testing procedures and specific requirements for carbon, carbon manganese, alloy and stainless steels

E1/AS1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

NZS 1170: Structural Design Actions

Part 5: 2004 Earthquake design actions – New Zealand standard

B1/VM1, G12/AS2

AS/NZS 1170: Structural Design Actions

Part 0: 2002 General principles

B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, C/AS1, G12/AS2

Amends: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

Part 1: 2002 Permanent, imposed and other actions

B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, G12/AS2

Amends: 1, 2

Part 2: 2002 Wind Actions

B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, G12/AS2

Amends: 1, 2, 3

Part 3: 2003 Snow and ice actions

B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, G12/AS2

Amend: 1

Amend 13
Feb 2014

AS/NZS 1254: 2010 PVC pipes and fittings for stormwater and surface water applications

E1/AS1

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend: 1 (2011)

AS/NZS 1260: 2002 PVC pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent applications

SH/AS1

AS/NZS 1260: 2009 PVC-U Pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent applications

E1/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2, G14/VM1

Amend: 1 (2011)

NZS/BS 1387: 1985 Specification for screwed and socketed steel tubes and tubulars and for plain end steel tubes suitable for welding or screwing to BS 21 pipe threads

G10/AS1, G12/AS1, G14/VM1

Amend: 1

AS 1397: 2001 Steel sheet and strip – Hot-dipped zinc-coated or aluminium/zinc-coated

E1/AS1

AS/NZS 1477: 2006 PVC pipes and fittings for pressure applications

G12/AS1, G14/VM1

Amend: 1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Where quoted

		Where quoted
Amend 13 Feb 2014		
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 1546: 2008 On-site domestic wastewater treatment units Part 1: Septic tanks	G14/VM1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS/NZS 1547: 2012 On-site domestic wastewater management	G13/VM1
	AS/NZS 1604: Specification for preservative treatment Part 3: 2002 Plywood	SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 1646: 2007 Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes	G13/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS/AS 1657: 1992 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders – Design, construction and installation (known as the SAA Code for fixed platforms, walkways, stairways, and ladders)	D1/AS1
	AS/NZS 1664:- Aluminium structures Part 1: 1997 Limit state design <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1668:- The use of ventilation and air conditioning in buildings Part 1: 1998 Fire and smoke control in multi-compartment buildings <i>Amend: 1</i>	C/VM1 C/AS1-C/AS6
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS/NZS 1680: Interior and workplace lighting Part 1: 2006 General principles and recommendations	F6/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1730: 1996 Washbasins	G1/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 1734: 1997 Aluminium and aluminium alloys – Flat sheet, coiled sheet and plate	E1/AS1, E2/AS1 SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 1748: 1997 Timber – Stress graded – Product requirements for mechanically stress-graded timber Part 1: 2011 General requirements <i>Amend: 1</i> Part 2: 2011 Qualification of grading method <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM1 B1/VM1 B1/VM1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS/NZS 1859 Reconstituted wood-based panels Part 1: 2002 Particleboard	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1905:- Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant walls Part 1: 1997 Fire-resistant doorsets	HB/SS 15
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 2023: 1995 Baths for ablutionary purposes	G1/AS1

Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2032: 2006 Installation of PVC pipe systems <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/AS1, E1/AS1, G12/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2/AS3, G14/VM1
Amends 11 and 12	NZS/AS 2033: 2008 Installation of polyethylene pipe systems <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B1/AS1, E1/AS1, G12/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2, G14/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2243:1 2005 Safety in laboratories – Planning and operational aspects	HB/SS 11
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 2243:8 2006 Safety in laboratories – Fume cupboards	HB/SS 11
	AS/NZS 2269: 2004 Plywood – Structural	SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 2269: 2008 Plywood – Structural	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
Amends 11 and 12	AS/NZS 2280: 2012 Ductile iron pipes and fittings	E1/AS1, G13/AS2
Amend 13 Feb 2014		
	AS/NZS 2293:- Emergency evacuation lighting for buildings	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1995 Inspection and maintenance <i>Amends: 1, 2, 3</i>	F6/AS1, HB/SS 4
Amend 13 Feb 2014		
Amends 11 and 12	NZS 2295: 2006 Pliable, permeable building underlays	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
	AS/NZS 2566: 2002 Buried Flexible pipelines. Part 1: 1998 Structural Design Part 2: 2002 Installation	B1/AS1, E1/AS1 B1/AS1, E1/AS1, G13/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2588: 1998 Gypsum plasterboard	SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 2642:- Polybutylene pipe systems Part 1: 2007 Polybutylene (PB) pipe extrusion compounds Part 2: 2008 Polybutylene (PB) pipe for hot and cold water applications Part 3: 2008 Mechanical jointing fittings for use with polybutylene (PB) pipes for hot and cold water applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1 G12/AS1, G14/VM1 G12/AS1, G14/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
Amends 11 and 12		
Amends 11 and 12		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2699: Built-in components for masonry construction. Part 1: 2000 Wall ties Part 2: 2000 Connectors and accessories Part 3: 2002 Lintels and shelf angles (durability requirements)	SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014		
	AS/NZS 2712: 2007 Solar and heat pump water heaters – design and construction <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G12/AS2

Modified
1 Aug 2011

		Where quoted
	AS/NZS 2712: 2007 Solar and heat pump water heaters – design and construction	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2728: 2007 Prefinished/prepainted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications – Performance requirements	SH/AS1
Amends 12 and 13	AS/NZS 2728: 2013 Prefinished/prepainted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications – Performance requirements	E2/AS11
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 2845:- Water supply Part 1: 2010 Materials, design and performance requirements	G12/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS/NZS 2904: 1995 Damp-proof courses and flashings <i>Amend: 1</i>	E2/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2908: Cellulose-cement products Part 2: 2000 Flat sheet	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS/NZS 2918: 2001 Domestic solid fuel burning appliances – installation	B1/AS3 C/AS1-C/AS6 SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS/NZS 3000: 2007 Electrical installations <i>Amends: 1, 2</i>	G9/VM1/AS1
	NZS 3101:- Concrete structures standard Part 1: 2006 The design of concrete structures <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B2/AS1 B1/VM1
	NZS 3106: 2009 Design of concrete structures for the storage of liquids	B1/VM1, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3109: 1997 Specification for concrete construction <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B1/AS3, SH/AS1
	NZS 3112:- Methods of test for concrete Part 2: 1986 Tests relating to the determination of strength of concrete <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B1/AS3
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3114: 1987 Specification for concrete surface finishes <i>Amend: 1</i>	D1/AS1, G15/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3116: 2002 Concrete segmental and flagstone paving <i>Amend: 1</i>	D1/AS1
Amends 11 and 12		
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS/NZS 3350.2.35: 1999 Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Particular requirements – Instantaneous water heaters <i>Amends: 1, 2</i>	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010		

	NZS 3404:- Part 1: 1997	Steel structures standard Steel structures standard <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B1/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
	AS/NZS 3500:- Part 1: 2003	National plumbing and drainage code Water services <i>Amends: 1, 2</i>	G12/VM1/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014			
	Part 2: 2003	Sanitary plumbing and drainage <i>Amends: 1, 2, 3, 4</i>	G13/AS1/VM2/AS2/ AS3
Amend 13 Feb 2014			
	Part 4: 2003	Heated water services <i>Amends: 1, 2</i>	G12/VM1/AS1/AS2
Amends 11 and 13			
	Part 5: 2003	Domestic installation	SH/AS1
	NZS 3501: 1976	Specification for copper tubes for water, gas, and sanitation <i>Amend: 1, 2 and 3</i>	G10/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2 G12/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014			
	AS/NZS 3518: 2004	Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) compounds pipes and fittings for pressure applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	G13/AS2, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	NZS/BS 3601: 1987 (1993)	Specification for carbon steel pipes and tubes with specified room temperature properties for pressure purposes <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	NZS 3602:- Part 1: 2003	Timber and wood-based products for use in building	B2/AS1, E2/AS1 SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	NZS 3603: 1993	Timber structures standard <i>Amend: 1, 2 (Applies to building work consented prior to 1 April 2007) Amend: 1, 2, 4 (Applies to building work consented on or after 1 April 2007)</i>	B1/VM1/VM4
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
	NZS 3604: 1990	Timber framed buildings	SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014			
	NZS 3604: 1999	Timber framed buildings <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G12/AS1
Amends 12 and 13			
	NZS 3604: 2011	Timber framed buildings	G12/AS2, SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014			
	NZS 3605: 2001	Timber piles and poles for use in building	B1/AS1/AS3, B2/AS1 E1/AS1, E2/VM1/AS1/ AS2, G12/AS2. G13/AS2
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	NZS 3617: 1979	Specification for profiles of weatherboards, fascia boards, and flooring	B1/VM4, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
	NZS 3622: 2004	Verification of timber properties <i>Amend: 1</i>	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
			B1/VM1, SH/AS1

			Where quoted
	NZS 3631: 1988	New Zealand timber grading rules	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3640: 2003	Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B1/VM4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3640: 2003	Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber <i>Amend: 4</i>	SH/AS1
Amends 12 and 13	NZS 3640: 2003	Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</i>	B2/AS1
	AS/NZS 3661:-	Slip resistance of pedestrian surfaces	
	Part 1: 1993	Requirements	D1/VM1/AS1
	Part 2: 1994	Guide to the reduction of slip hazards	D1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 3666:-	Air-handling and water systems of buildings – Microbial Control	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 2011	Design, installation and commissioning	G4/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Part 2: 2011	Operation and maintenance	G4/AS1, HB/SS 9
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 3: 2000	Performance-based maintenance of cooling water systems	HB/SS 9
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS/AS 3725: 2007	Design for installation of buried concrete pipes	B1/VM1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS/NZS 3837: 1998	Method of test for heat and smoke release rates for materials and products using an oxygen consumption calorimeter	C/VM2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 3869: 1999	Domestic solid fuel burning appliances – Design and construction	B1/AS3
	AS/NZS 3896: 1998	Waters – Examination for legionellae including <i>Legionella pneumophila</i> <i>Amend: 1</i>	HB/SS 9
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4020: 2005	Testing of products for use in contact with drinking water	E2/AS1, G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4058: 2007	Pre cast concrete pipes(pressure and non-pressure)	B1/VM1, E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4121: 2001	Design for access and mobility – Buildings and associated facilities	D1/AS1, G1/AS1, G5/AS1, SH/AS1
Amends 11 and 12	AS/NZS 4129: 2008	Fillings for polyethylene (PE) pipes for pressure applications	G12/AS1, G14/VM1
Amends 12 and 13	AS/NZS 4130: 2009	Polyethylene (PE) pipe for pressure applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	E1/AS1, G12/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1
Amends 12 and 13	AS/NZS 4200:	Pliable building membranes and underlays	SH/AS1
	Part 1: 1994	Materials <i>Amend: 1</i>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010			

			Where quoted
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4203: 1992	Code of practice for general structural design and design loadings for buildings <i>Corrigendum: 1</i>	G12/AS2
	NZS 4206: 1992	Concrete interlocking roofing tiles	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4210: 2001	Code of practice for masonry construction: materials and workmanship <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/AS3, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4211: 1985	Specification for performance of windows <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3</i>	SH/AS1
	NZS 4211: 2008	Specification for performance of windows	B1/VM1, E2/VM1/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 4214: 2006	Methods of determining the total thermal resistance of parts of buildings	E3/AS1, G5/AS1, H1/VM1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4217:-	Pressed metal tile roofs	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 1980	Specification for roofing tiles and their accessories	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1980	Code of practice for preparation of the structure and the laying and fixing of metal roofing tiles	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4218: 2004	Energy efficiency – housing and small building envelope	H1/VM1/AS1
Amends 11, 12, 13			
Amends 12 and 13	NZS 4219: 2009	Specification for seismic resistance of engineering systems in buildings	B1/VM1, G10/AS1 G14/VM1
	NZS 4223:-	Code of practice for glazing in buildings	
	Part 1: 2008	Glass selection and glazing	B1/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1985	The selection and installation of manufactured sealed insulating glass units <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B1/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Part 3: 1999	Human impact safety requirements	B1/AS1, D2/AS3 F2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 4: 2008	Wind, dead, snow, and live actions	B1/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	NZS 4229: 2013	Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design	B1/AS1/AS3, E1/AS1, G13/AS2

			Where quoted
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4230: 2004	Design of reinforced concrete masonry structures <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM1
	NZS 4231: 1985	Specification for self-luminous exit signs <i>Amend: A</i>	F8/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	NZS 4232:- Part 2: 1988	Performance criteria for fire resisting enclosures Fire resisting glazing systems	HB/SS 15 C/AS2-C/AS6,
	NZS HB 4236: 2002	Masonry veneer wall cladding	E2/AS1
	NZS 4239: 1993	Automatic sliding door assemblies <i>Amend: A</i>	HB/SS 3
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4243: Part 1: 2007 Part 2: 2007	Energy efficiency – large buildings Building thermal envelope Lighting	H1/VM1/AS1 H1/VM1/AS1
	NZS 4246: 2006	Energy efficiency – Installing insulation in residential buildings	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 4251:- Part 1: 2007	Solid plastering Cement plaster for walls, ceilings and soffits	B1/AS1, B2/AS1, E2/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4256: Part 2: 1994	Plastic roof and wall cladding materials Unplasticized polyvinyl chloride (uPVC) building sheets	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4284: 2008	Testing of building facades	E2/VM1
	NZS 4297: 1998	Engineering design for earth buildings	B1/VM1, B2/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4298: 1998	Materials and workmanship for earth buildings <i>Amend: 1</i>	E2/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4299: 1998	Earth buildings not requiring specific design <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/AS1, B2/AS1, E2/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4303: 1990	Ventilation for acceptable indoor air quality	G4/AS1
	NZS 4304: 2002	Health care waste management	G15/AS1
	NZS 4305: 1996	Energy efficiency – domestic type hot water systems	H1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4331: 1995 Part 1: Part 2: Part 3:	Metallic flanges Steel flanges Cast iron flanges Copper alloy and composite flanges	G10/AS1, G14/VM1 G10/AS1, G14/VM1 G14/VM1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	NZS 4332: 1997	Non-domestic passenger and goods lifts	C/AS2-C/AS6, D2/AS1, HB/SS 8
	NZS 4334: 2012	Platform lifts and low-speed lifts	D2/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4401: 2006	High density polyethylene (PE-HD) pipes and fittings for soil and waste discharge (low and high temperature) systems inside buildings	G13/AS1, G14/VM1

			Where quoted
	NZS 4402:-	Methods of testing soils for civil engineering purposes	B1/VM1
	Part 2:-	Soil classification tests	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Test 2.2: 1986	Determination of the liquid limit	B1/Defs, SH/AS1
	Test 2.6: 1986	Determination of the linear shrinkage	B1/Defs
	Part 4:-	Soil compaction tests	
	Test 4.2.3: 1988	Related densities	B1/VM4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4431: 1989	Code of practice for earth fill for residential development <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM1, E2/AS2 SH/AS1
	NZS 4442: 1988	Welded steel pipes and fittings for water, sewage and medium pressure gas	E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1
	AS/NZS 4455: 1997	Masonry units and segmental pavers	SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 4456: 2003	Masonry unit and segmental pavers – Methods of test <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014			
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
Amends 11, 12, 13	NZS 4510: 2008	Fire hydrant systems for buildings	C/AS1-C/AS7, C/VM2, HB/SS 6
	NZS 4512: 2010	Fire detection and alarm systems in buildings	C/AS1-C/AS7, C/VM2, HB/SS 2, HB/SS 15, F7/AS1
	NZS 4514: 2009	Interconnected smoke alarms for houses	C/AS2, F7/AS1
	NZS 4515: 2009	Fire sprinkler systems for life safety in sleeping occupancies (up to 2000 m ²)	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2, HB/SS 1, F7/AS1
Amends 12 and 13	NZS 4520: 2010	Fire resistant doorsets	C/AS1-C/AS6
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4534: 2006	Zinc and zinc/aluminium-alloy coatings on steel wire	E2/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	NZS 4541: 2013	Automatic fire sprinkler systems <i>Amend: 1</i>	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2, F7/AS1, HB/SS 1
	AS/NZS 4586: 2004	Slip resistance classification of new pedestrian surface materials	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4600: 2005	Cold-formed steel structures	B1/VM1
	NZS 4602: 1988	Low pressure copper thermal storage electric water heaters <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4603: 1985	Installation of low pressure thermal storage electric water heaters with copper cylinders (open vented systems) <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1, SH/AS1

		Where quoted	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4606:- Part 1: 1989	Storage water heaters General requirements <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3</i>	G12/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1989	Specific requirements for water heaters with single shells <i>Amend: A</i>	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 3: 1992	Specific requirements for water heaters with composite shells <i>Amend: A</i>	G12/AS1, SH/AS1
	NZS 4607: 1989	Installation of thermal storage electric water heaters: valve vented systems	G12/AS1
	NZS 4608: 1992	Control valves for hot water systems	G12/AS1
	NZS 4613: 1986	Domestic solar water heaters	G12/AS1/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4614: 1986	Installation of domestic solar water heating systems <i>Amend: 1 (1986) Erratum</i>	G12/AS2
Amend 13 Feb 2014	NZS 4617: 1989	Tempering (3-port mixing) valves	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4671: 2001	Steel reinforcing materials	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4671: 2001	Steel Reinforcing Materials <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/AS1/AS3
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4680: 2006	Hot-dip galvanised (zinc) coating on fabricated ferrous articles	B1/AS3, E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 4692: Part 2: 2005	Electric water heaters Minimum Energy Performance Standards (MEPS) requirements and energy labelling	G12/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4740: 2000	Natural ventilaters – classification and performance	G4/AS1
	AS/NZS 4765: 2007	Modified polyvinyl chloride (PVC-M) pipes for pressure applications	G14/VM1
	AS/NZS 4858: 2004	Wet area membranes	E2/AS1
	AS/NZS 4859:- Part 1: 2002	Materials for the thermal insulation of buildings General criteria and technical provisions	H1/AS1
	AS/NZS 4936: 2002	Air admittance valves for use in sanitary plumbing and drainage systems.	G13/AS1, SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 5000.1 2005	Electric cables – Polymeric insulated – For working voltages up to and including 0.6/1 (1.2) kV <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 5000.2 2006	Electric cables – Polymeric insulated Part 2: For working voltages up to and including 450/750 v.	G12/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 5065: 2005	Polyethylene and polypropylene pipe and fittings for drainage and sewerage applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	E1/AS1, G13/AS2

			Where quoted
	NZS/BS 5252: 1976	Framework for colour co-ordination for building purposes <i>Amend: 1</i>	F8/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	NZS 5261: 2003	Gas installation <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	SH/AS1
Amends 11 and 13	NZS 5262: 2003	Gas appliance safety <i>Amend: 1</i>	SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS/NZS 5601:- Part 1: 2010	Gas installations General installations <i>Amend: 1</i>	C/AS1–C/AS6, G4/AS1, G10/MM1/AS1, G11/AS1
	NZS 5807:- Part 2: 1980	Code of practice for industrial identification by colour, wording or other coding Identification of contents of piping, conduit and ducts <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G10/AS1 G12/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 6214: 1988	Thermostats and thermal cutouts for domestic thermal storage electric water heaters (alternating current only)	G12/AS1
Amends 11 and 12	NZS 6703: 1984	Code of practice for interior lighting design <i>Amend C1: 1985</i>	G7/AS1/VM1 G8/VM1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	NZS 6742: 1971	Code of practice for emergency lighting in buildings	F8/AS1, HB/SS 4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 7601: 1978	Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 3) for cold water services	G12/AS1, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 7602: 1977	Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 5) for cold water services <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 7610: 1991	Blue polyethylene pipes up to nominal size 63 for below ground use for potable water <i>Amend: 1, 2, A</i>	G12/AS1
	NZS 7646: 1978	Specification for polyethylene pipes and fittings for gas reticulation	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	SNZ HB 8630: 2009	Tracks and outdoor visitor structures	B1/VM1
	AS/NZS 60335 Part 2.30: 2009	Household and similar electrical appliances Safety appliance – Particular requirements for room heaters	SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Part 2.35: 2004	Particular requirements – Instantaneous water heaters	G12/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS/NZS 60598: 2001	Luminaires Part 2.2 Particular requirements – Recessed Luminaires	C/AS1, C/AS2

		Where quoted	
Standards Australia			
	AS D26: 1972	Tube fittings with Dryseal American standard taper pipe and unified threads for automotive and industrial use	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	AS 1111:	ISO metric hexagon bolts and screws – Product grades A and B	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 2000	Bolts	
	Part 2: 2000	Screws	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1167:-	Welding and brazing – Filler metals	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 1: 2005	Filler metal for brazing and braze welding	G10/AS1
	AS 1214: 1983	Hot-dip galvanised coatings on threaded fasteners (ISO metric coarse thread series)	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 1229: 2002	Laundry troughs	G2/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
	AS 1273: 1991	Unplasticized PVC (uPVC) downpipe and fittings for rainwater	E1/AS1
	AS 1308: 1987	Electric water heaters – Thermostats and thermal cut-outs <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1
	AS 1357:-	Water valves for use with unvented water heaters	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 2009	Protection valves <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G12/AS1
	Part 2: 2005	Control valves <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G12/AS1
	AS 1366:-	Rigid cellular plastics sheets for thermal insulation	
	Part 1: 1992	Rigid cellular polyurethane (RC/PUR) <i>Amend: 1</i>	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2
	Part 2: 1992	Rigid cellular polyisocyanurate (RC/PIR)	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2
	Part 3: 1992	Rigid cellular polystyrene – moulded (RC/PS-M) <i>Amend: 1</i>	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Part 4: 1989	Rigid cellular polystyrene – extruded (RC/PS-E)	E2/AS1 C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2 E2/AS1
Amends 11 and 12	AS 1397: 2011	Continuous hot-dip metallic sheet coated steel sheet and strip – Coatings of zinc and zinc allowed with aluminium and magnesium <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/AS3, E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS 1432: 2004	Copper tubes for plumbing, gasfitting and drainage applications	G10/AS1
Amends 11 and 12			

	AS 1530:-	Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 1994	Combustibility test for materials	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2
	Part 2: 1993	Test for flammability of materials	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Amend 13 Feb 2014	Part 4: 2005	Fire-resistance tests of elements of building construction	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2
	AS 1566: 1997	Cooper and copper alloys – Rolled flat products	E2/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1579: 2001	Arc welded steel pipes and fittings for water and waste water	E1/AS1, G13/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1589: 2001	Copper and copper alloy waste fittings	G13/AS1
	AS 1646: 2007	Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes	E1/AS1
	AS 1668:-	The use of mechanical ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings	G4/AS1
	Part 2: 2002	Ventilation design for indoor-air containment control <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G4/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 1670:-	Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems – System design, installation and commissioning	
	Part 6: 1997	Smoke alarms	F7/AS1
Amends 11 and 13	AS 1691: 1985	Domestic oil-fired appliances – installation	C/AS1-C/AS6
	AS 1741: 1991	Vitrified clay pipes and fittings with flexible joints – Sewerage quality	E1/AS1, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1804: 1976	Soft lead sheet and strip	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	AS 1851: 2005	Maintenance of fire protection equipment	HB/SS 1, SS 2, SS 5, SS 9, SS 13, SS 15
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 1976: 1992	Vitreous china used in sanitary appliances	G1/AS1
	AS 2033: 2008	Installation of polyethylene pipe systems	G14/VM1, E1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 2049: 2002	Roof tiles	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	AS 2050: 2002	Installation of roof tiles	E2/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 2159: 1995	Rules for the design and installation of piling (known as the SAA Piling Code) <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM4
Amend 13 Feb 2014			
Amend 11 Sep 2010			

Where quoted

			Where quoted
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 2293: Part 1: 2005	Emergency escape lighting and exit signs for buildings System design, installation and operation <i>Amend: 1</i>	F6/AS1, F8/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amends 12 and 13			
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 3: 2005	Emergency escape luminaires and exit signs <i>Amend: 1</i>	F6/AS1, F8/AS1
	AS 2845:- devices	Water supply – Mechanical backflow prevention	
	Part 3: 1993	Field testing and maintenance <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1, HB/SS 7
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 2870: 1996	Residential slabs and footings – Construction	SH/AS1
	AS 2887: 1993	Plastic waste fittings	G13/AS1
	AS 2890:- Part 1: 2004	Parking facilities Off-street parking <i>Amend: 1</i>	D1/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 2: 2002	Off-street commercial facilities <i>Amend: 1</i>	D1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 3566	Self-drilling screws for the building and construction industries	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	Part 2: 2002	Corrosion resistance	
	AS 3571: 2009	Plastic piping systems – Glass reinforced thermoplastics (GRP) systems based on unsaturated polyester (UP) resin – pressure and non-pressure drainage and sewerage (ISO 10467: 2004 MOD)	G13/AS2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 3588: 1996	Shower bases and shower modules	G1/AS1
	AS 3688: 2005	Water supply – Copper and copper alloy compression and capillary fittings and threaded end connectors <i>Amend: 1,2</i>	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amends 11 and 12	AS 3690: 2009	Installation of ABS pipe systems	G14/VM1
	AS 3706:- Part 1: 2003	Geotextiles – Methods of test General requirements, sampling, conditioning, basic physical properties and statistical analysis	E1/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
	AS 3730	Guide to the properties of paints for buildings	SH/AS1
	Part 6: 1991	Solvent-borne – Exterior – Full gloss enamel	
	Part 7: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Flat	
	Part 8: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Low gloss	
	Part 9: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Semi-gloss	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 10: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Gloss	

			Where quoted
	AS 3730	Guide to the properties of paints for buildings	E2/AS1
	Part 6: 2006	Solvent-borne – Exterior – Full gloss enamel	E2/AS1
	Part 7: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Flat	E2/AS1
	Part 8: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Low gloss	E2/AS1
	Part 9: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Semi-gloss	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 10: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Gloss	E2/AS1
	AS 3786: 1993	Smoke alarms <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</i>	F7/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
	AS 4046	Methods of testing roof tiles	
	Part 9: 2002	Determination of dynamic weather resistance	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 13 Feb 2014	AS 4072:-	Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant separating elements	C/VM2
	Part 1: 2005	Service penetrations and control joints <i>Amend: 1</i>	C/AS1-C/AS6,
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 4139: 2003	Fibre reinforced concrete pipes and fittings	G13/AS2
	AS 4178: 1994	Electromagnetic door holders	HB/SS 3
	AS 4254:-	Ductwork for air-handling systems in buildings	
	Part 1: 2012	Flexible duct	C/VM2
Amend 13 Oct 2014	Part 2: 2012	Rigid duct	C/VM2
	AS 4276:-		
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 3.1: 2007	Water plate microbiology – Pour plate method using plate count agar	HB/SS 9
	AS 4290: 2000	Design and installation of revolving doors <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	HB/SS 3
	AS 5007: 2007	Powered doors for pedestrian access and egress	HB/SS 3
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 60188.4: 2007	Hearing aids – magnetic field strength in audio- frequency induction loops for hearing aid purposes	HB/SS 12

British Standards Institution		Where quoted
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 10: 2009 Specification for flanges and bolting for pipes, valves and fittings	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 143, and BS 1256: 2000 Threaded pipe fittings in malleable cast iron and cast copper alloy <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</i>	G10/AS1, G14/VM1
	BSDD 175: 1988 Code of practice for the identification of potentially contaminated land and its investigation	F1/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 437: 2008 Specification for cast iron spigot and socket drain pipes and fittings <i>Amend: 5877</i>	G13/AS2
	BS 585:- Part 1: 1989 Wood stairs Specification for stairs with closed risers for domestic use, including straight and winder flights and quarter or half landings	D1/AS1
	BS EN 988: 1997 Zinc and zinc alloys. Specification for rolled flat products for building	E2/AS1
	BS EN 1044:1999 Brazing. Filler metals	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 1172: 1997 Copper and copper alloys – sheet and strip for building	E1/AS1
	BS EN 1490: 2000 Building valves. Combined temperature and pressure relief valves. Tests and requirements	G12/AS1
	BS EN 1491: 2000 Building valves. Expansion valves. Tests and requirements	G12/AS1
	BS EN 1567: 1999 Building valves. Water pressure reducing valves and combination water reducing valves. Requirements and tests.	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 1595: 1997 Pressure equipment made from borosilicate glass 3.3 – general rules for design, manufacture and testing	G14/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		

			Where quoted
	BS EN 1759 Part 1: 2004	Flanges and their joints. Circular flanges for pipes, valves, fittings and accessories, class-designated. Steel flanges, NPS 1/2 to 24.	E1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
Amends 11 and 12			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 2971: 1991	Specification for Class II arc welding of carbon steel pipework for carrying fluids	G14/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 3402: 1969	Specification for quality of vitreous china sanitary appliances	G1/AS1
	BS 3799: 1974 (1994)	Specification for steel pipe fittings, screwed and socket-welding for the petroleum industry	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
Amend 13 Feb 2014			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 4991: 1974 (1982)	Specification for propylene copolymer pressure pipe	G14/VM1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	BS 5252: 1976	Framework for colour co-ordination for building purposes <i>Amend: 1</i>	F8/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014			
	BS 5378:- Part 1: 1980	Safety signs and colours Specification for colour and design	F8/AS1
	BS 5395:- Part 2: 1984	Stairs, ladders and walkways Code of practice for the design of helical and spiral stairs	D1/AS1
	BS 5446:- Part 1: 1990	Components of automatic fire alarm systems for residential premises Specification for self-contained smoke alarms and point-type smoke detectors <i>Amends: 6863, 7648, 9628</i>	F7/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 6037:- Part 1: 2003 Part 2: 2004	Code of practice for the Planning, design, installation and use of permanently installed access equipment Suspended access equipment Travelling ladders and gantries	HB/SS 10 HB/SS 10
Amend 11 Sep 2010			

		Where quoted
	BS 6374:- Lining of equipment with polymeric materials for the process industries	
	Part 1: 1985 Specification for lining with sheet thermoplastics	G14/VM1
	Part 2: 1984 Specification for lining with non-sheet applied thermoplastics	G14/VM1
	Part 3: 1984 Specification for lining with stoved thermosetting resins	G14/VM1
	Part 4: 1984 Specification for lining with cold curing thermosetting resins	G14/VM1
	Part 5: 1985 Specification for lining with rubbers	G14/VM1
	BS 6464: 1984 Specification for reinforced plastics pipes, fittings and joints for process plants	G14/VM1
	BS 6538: 1987 Air permeance of paper and board	E2/AS1
	Part 3: 1987 Method for determination of air permeance using the Garley apparatus	
	BS 6920:- Suitability of non-metallic products for use in contact with water intended for human consumption with regard to their effect on the quality of the water	
	Part 1: 2000 Specification	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 2000 Methods of tests	G12/AS1
	Part 3: 2000 High temperature tests	G12/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 7159: 1989 Code of practice for design and construction of glass-reinforced plastics (GRP) piping systems for individual plants or sites	G14/VM1
	BS 7273:- Code of practice for the operation of fire protection measures	C/VM2
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Part 4: 2007 Actuation of release mechanisms for doors	
	BS 7777: 1993 Flat bottomed, vertical, cylindrical storage tanks for low temperature service	G14/VM1
	Part 1: Guide to the general provisions applying for design, construction and installation	
	Part 2: Specification for design and construction of single, double and full containment metal tanks for the storage of liquified gas at temperatures down to -165°C	
	Part 3: Recommendations for the design and construction of prestressed and reinforced concrete tanks and tank foundations and for the design and installation of tank insulation, tank lines and tank coating	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 8004: 1986 Code of practice for foundations	B1/VM4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 10241: 2000 Steel threaded pipe fittings	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 10253-2: 2007 Butt-welding pipe fittings – non-alloy and ferric alloy steels with specific inspection requirements	G10/AS1

		Where quoted
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 10253-3: 2008 Butt-welding pipe fittings – wrought austenitic and austenitic-ferritic (duplex) stainless steels without specific inspection requirements	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 12056-2: 2000 Gravity drainage systems inside buildings. Sanitary pipework, layout and calculation	G13/VM1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	BS EN 12101 Part 1: 2005 Smoke and heat control systems Specification for smoke barriers	C/AS2-C/AS6
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 12285: Part 1: 2003 Workshop fabricated steel tanks Horizontal cylindrical single skin and double skin tanks for the underground storage of flammable and non-flammable water polluting liquids	G14/VM1
	Part 2: 2005 Horizontal cylindrical single skin and double skin tanks for the aboveground storage of flammable and non-flammable water polluting liquids	G14/VM1
	BS EN 12585: 1999 Glass plant, pipeline and fittings – Pipeline and fittings DN 15 to 1000 – compatibility and interchangeability	G14/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 13121-3: 2008 GRP tanks and vessels for use above ground. Design and workmanship <i>Amend: 1 (2010)</i>	G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 14324: 2004 Brazing. Guidance on the application of brazed joints	G10/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	BS EN 14604: 2005 Smoke alarm devices	F7/AS1

New Zealand Publications

Building Research Association of New Zealand

Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Bulletin 330: 1995 Thin flooring materials – 2. Preparation and laying. Appendix 1	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Bulletin 411: 2001 Recommended timber cladding profiles	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	BRANZ EM 4: 2005 Evaluation method for jointing systems for flush finished fibre cement sheet	E2/AS1
	BRANZ EM 5: 2005 Evaluation method for adhesives and seam tapes for butyl and EPDM rubber membranes	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BRANZ EM 6: 2011 Evaluation method for window and door support mechanisms or bars	E2/AS1
	BRANZ House Insulation Guide: 1995	E3/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Paper C1: 1978 A construction guide to home insulation (second edition)	E3/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Technical paper P21: 1991 A wall bracing test and evaluation procedure	SH/AS1
	BRANZ Supplement to P21 An evaluation method of P21 test results for use with NZS 3604: 1990	SH/AS1

	Where quoted	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	BRANZ Study Report No. 137: 2005 Development of the Vertical Channel Test Method for Regulatory Control of Combustible Exterior Cladding Systems, Whiting, P.N.	C/VM2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Technical paper P36: 1983 Food processing floors, a guide to design, materials and construction. W.R. Sharman	G3/AS1
	BRANZ Evaluation Method EM1 Structural joints – strength and stiffness evaluation	SH/AS1
	ALF 3: The ‘Annual Loss Factor’ Method. A design tool for energy efficient houses, 3 rd edition (April 2000) Albrecht Stoecklein and Mark Bassett	H1/Defs
Amends 12 and 13	Cement & Concrete Association of New Zealand CCANZ CP01: 2014 Code of Practice for weathertight concrete and concrete masonry construction	E2/AS3
	Centre for Advanced Engineering Fire Engineering Design Guide, 2008	C/VM2
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Chemical Industry Council Incorporated HSNO Code of Practice 2-1 09-04 Signage for premises storing hazardous substances and dangerous goods	F8/AS1
	Master Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers NZ Inc and Water New Zealand NZ Backflow testing standard 2011AS1 3.6.1 b), 3.7.2 Field testing of backflow prevention devices and verification of air gaps	G12/AS1, HB/SS 7
	New Zealand Metal Roofing Manufacturers Inc New Zealand Metal Roof and Wall Cladding Code of Practice: 2008	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	The National Association of Steel Framed Housing Inc (NASH) NASH Standard: Residential and Low Rise Steel Framing Part 1 2010 Design Criteria	B1/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Royal New Zealand Foundation of the Blind Accessible Signage Guidelines: 2010	F8/AS1
	Government Departments and Agencies	
	Department of Labour Workplace exposure standards and biological indices for New Zealand: 1992	F1/VM1, G4/VM1
	Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries MQ 1: 1988 Qual approvals manual	G3/AS1

Ministry of Economic Development

- NZECP 34: 2001 Electrical safety distances
- NZECP 36: 1993 Harmonic levels
- NZECP 51: 2004 Homeowner/occupier's electrical wiring work in domestic installations
- Amend 13
Feb 2014 | NZECP 54: 2001 Installation of recessed luminaires and auxiliary equipment

Where quoted

G9/VM1
G9/VM1
G9/AS1
G9/AS1

Ministry of Health

- Ministry of Health: 2005 Drinking Water Standards for New Zealand
- Ministry of Health: 2006 Household water supplies: the selection, operation and maintenance of individual household water supplies

SH/AS1
SH/AS1

Ministry of Transport

- Power Lift Rules: 1989
- Rules for power lifts not exceeding 750 watts (one horsepower): 1985

HB/SS 8
HB/SS 8

SCION

- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | Measurement of moisture content of wood

E2/AS1

National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research Ltd (NIWA)

- Temperature Normals for New Zealand 1961-1990
by A I Tomlinson and J Sansom (ISBN 0478083343)

H1/Defs

New Zealand Legislation

- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Chartered Professional Engineers of New Zealand Act 2002
- Amend 13
Feb 2014 | Education (Early Childhood Services) Regulations 2008
- Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987
- Amends
12 and 13 | Fire Safety and Evacuation of Buildings Regulations 2006
- Gas Regulations 1993

B1/VM1
C/AS4
F4/AS1
C/AS2-C/AS6
G12/AS1

- Amend 13
Feb 2014 | Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996
- Hazardous Substances (Classification) Regulations 2001
- Hazardous Substances (Classes 1 to 5 Controls) Regulations 2001
- Hazardous Substances (Dangerous Goods and Scheduled Toxic Substances) Transfer Notice 2004

C/AS1-C/AS6, F3/VM1
F3/VM1
F3/VM1
F3/VM1

- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Hazardous Substances (Disposal) Regulations 2001
- Hazardous Substances (Emergency Management) Regulations 2001

G14/VM1
F3/VM1

- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Health & Safety in Employment Act 1992
- Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 2006

HB/SS 9
SH/AS1

- Resource Management Act 1991

E1/VM1, G14/VM1

- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Resource Management (National Environment Standards relating to certain Pollutants, Dioxins and other Toxins) Regulations: 2004 (NESAQ)

SH/AS1

		Where quoted
	<p>New Zealand Geomechanics Society</p> <p>Guidelines for the field descriptions of soils and rocks in engineering use. Nov 1988</p>	B1/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 11	<p>Australian Publications</p> <hr/> <p>Australian Building Codes Board</p> <p>International Fire Engineering Guidelines (IFEG): 2005</p>	C/VM2
Amend 13 Feb 2014	<p>Australia/NZ Publications</p> <hr/> <p>Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council</p> <p>Guidelines for assessment and management of contaminated sites: 1992</p>	F1/VM1
	<p>British Publications</p> <hr/> <p>Building Research Establishment (UK)</p> <p>BRE Defect action sheet DAS 131: May 1989</p> <p>External walls: Combustible external plastics insulation: Horizontal fire barriers</p> <p>BRE Report 135: 1988</p> <p>Fire performance of external thermal insulation for walls in multi-storey buildings. Rogowski B.F., Ramaprasad R., Southern J.R.</p>	C/AS2-C/AS6 C/AS2-C/AS6
Amend 13 Feb 2014	<p>Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers, London</p> <p>CIBSE Code Series A: 1996</p> <p>Air distribution systems</p>	G4/VM1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<p>International Publications</p> <hr/> <p>EIFS Industry Members Association</p> <p>EIMA 101.91: 1992 Standard Guide for resin of resin coated glass fibre mesh in exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS), Class PB.</p>	E2/AS1
	<p>The European Committee for Standardisation</p> <p>EN 81:- Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts</p> <p>Part 1: 1998 Electric lifts</p> <p>Part 2: 1998 Hydraulic lifts</p> <p>EN 115:- Safety of escalators and moving walks</p> <p>Part 1: 2008 Construction and installation</p> <p><i>Amend: A1</i></p>	D2/AS1, HB/SS 8 D2/AS1, HB/SS 8 D2/AS3, HB/SS 8
Amend 13 Feb 2014		

Amend 13 Feb 2014	BS EN 12101:- Part 1: 2008	Smoke and heat control systems Construction and installation	C/AS1-C/AS6
	EN 12380: 1999	Air admittance valves for drainage systems – Requirements and test methods	G13/AS1
	Eurocode DD ENV 1991: Eurocode 1: Part 2.2: 1996	Basis of design actions on structures Actions on structures exposed to fire	C/VM2
International Standards Organisation, Geneva			
	ICBO Evaluation Services Inc AC148:	Acceptance criteria for flashing materials	E2/AS1
	ISO 140/VII: 1978	Field measurements of impact sound insulation of floors	G6/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ISO 1182: 2010	Reaction to fire tests for products – Non-combustibility test	C/VM2
	ISO 3864: 2002	Safety colours and safety signs Part 1: Design principles for safety signs in workplaces and public areas	F8/AS1
	ISO 5660:- Part 1: 2002 Part 2: 2002	Reaction-to-fire tests – Heat release, smoke production and mass loss rate Heat release rate (cone calorimeter method) Smoke production rate (dynamic measurement)	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2 C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2
	ISO 7000: 2004	Graphic symbols for use on equipment	F8/AS1
	ISO 7010: 2003	Graphical symbols – safety colours and safety signs – Safety signs used in workplaces and public areas	F8/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	ISO 9223: 1992	Corrosion of metals and alloys; corrosivity of atmospheres; classification	E2/AS1
	ISO 9239:- Part 1: 2010	Reaction to fire tests for flooring Determination of the burning behaviour using a radiant heat source	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2
Amend 13 Feb 2014	ISO 9705: 1993	Fire tests – Full scale room test for surface products	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ISO 11600: 2002	Building Construction – Jointing products Classification and requirements for sealants	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	ISO 12239 2003	Fire detection and fire alarm systems – smoke alarms	F7/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ISO/TS 15510: 2003	Stainless steels – chemical composition	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	ISO 13571: 2007	Life-threatening components of fire Guidelines for the estimation of time available for escape using fire data	C/VM2
	ISO 13784:- Part 1: 2002	Reaction-to-fire tests for sandwich panel building systems Test method for small rooms	C/VM2

Where quoted**C/AS1-C/AS6****G13/AS1****C/VM2****E2/AS1****G6/VM1****C/VM2****F8/AS1****C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2****C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2****F8/AS1****F8/AS1****E2/AS1****C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2****C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2****E2/AS1, SH/AS1****F7/AS1****E2/AS1, SH/AS1****C/VM2****C/VM2**

		Where quoted	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	ISO 13785:- Part 1: 2002	Reaction-to-fire tests for façades Immediate-scale test	C/VM2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	World Health Organisation/Food and Agriculture Organisation Environmental Health Criteria 70	"Environment health criteria" for various chemicals	F1/VM1
		Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants, Technical report series 776 Geneva: 1989	F1/VM1
		IARC Monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans for individual chemicals, groups of chemicals, or processes. Published by the International Agency for Research on Cancer	F1/VM1
		Principles for the safety assessment of food additives and contaminants in food, Geneva: 1987	F1/VM1
	German Institute for Standardisation		
	DIN 5381: 1985	Identification colours	F8/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	DIN 6164: 1980	DIN Colour chart Part 2: Specification of colour samples	F8/AS1
	United States of America Publications		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	American National Standards Institute and American Society of Mechanical Engineers		
	ANSI/ASME B16.1: 1989	Cast iron pipe flanges and flanged fittings, Class 25, 125, 250 and 800	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ANSI/ASME B16.3: 1985	Malleable-iron threaded fittings, Classes 150 and 300	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ANSI/ASME B16.5: 1988	Pipe flanges and flanged fittings, steel-nickel alloy and other special alloys	G10/AS1
	ANSI/ASME B16.9: 1990	Factory-made wrought steel butt-welding fittings	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ANSI B16.11: 1980	Forged steel fittings, socket-welding and threaded	G10/AS1
	American Petroleum Institute		
	API SPEC 5L: 1991	Specification for line pipe	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	API STD 1104: 1988	Welding of pipelines and related facilities	G10/AS1

American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)

Design of smoke management systems. Klote and Milke 1992

American Society of Sanitary Engineers

ASSE 1050: 1991 Performance requirements for air admittance valves for plumbing DWV systems stack type devices

ASSE 1051: 1992 Performance requirements for air admittance valves for plumbing drainage systems

American Society for Testing and Materials

		Where quoted
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ASTM A 53 – 90a Specification for pipe, steel, black and hot-dipped, zinc-coated welded and seamless	C/AS1
	ASTM A 106 – 91a Specification for seamless carbon steel pipe for high temperature service	G13/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM D 1143: 1981 Test method for piles under static axial compressive load	G13/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Amends 11 and 12	ASTM C 1549: 2009 Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer	B1/VM4
	ASTM C 1549: 2009 Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM D 1667: 2005 Standard Test Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials – Vinyl Chloride Polymers and Copolymers (Closed-cell foam)	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM D 2240: 2005 Standard Test method for Rubber Property	E2/AS1
Amend 13 Feb 2014	ASTM D 2898: 2010 Standard Practice for Accelerated Weathering of Fire-retardant Treated Wood for Fire Testing	C/AS2-C/AS6
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM D 6134: 1997 Standard Specification for Vulcanised Rubber Sheets Used in Waterproofing Systems	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ASTM D 6134: 2007 Standard Specification for Vulcanised Rubber Sheets Used in Waterproofing Systems	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM E 96: 1992 Standard test methods for water vapour transmission of materials	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM E 96: 2005 Standard test methods for water vapour transmission of materials	E2/AS1
	ASTM E104: 2002 Standard Practice for Maintaining Constant Relative Humidity by Means of Aqueous Solutions	E2/AS1

		Where quoted
	ASTM E 336: 1990 Method for measurement of airborne sound insulation in buildings	G6/VM1
	ASTM E 413: 1987 Classification for rating sound insulation	G6/VM1
	ASTM E 492: 1990 Test method for laboratory measurement of impact sound transmission through floor-ceiling assemblies using a tapping machine	G6/VM1
Amends 10 and 11	ASTM E 903: 1996 Standard Test Method for Solar Absorbance, Reflectance, and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres	SH/AS1
	ASTM E 989: 1989 Classification for determination of impact insulation class (IIC)	G6/VM1
	ASTM E 2098: 2000 Standard Test Method for Determining Tensile Breaking Strength of Glass Fibre Reinforcing Mesh for Use in Class PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS), after Exposure to a Sodium Hydroxide Solution	E2/AS1
	ASTM E 2134: 2001 Standard Test Method for Evaluation the Tensile Adhesion Performance of an Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS)	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM G 154: 2006 Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM G 155: 2005 Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials	E2/AS1
National Fire Protection Association of America		
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
Amend 13 Feb 2014	NFPA 285: 1998 Standard method of test for the evaluation of flammability characteristics of exterior non load bearing wall assemblies containing components using the intermediate scale, multi-storey test apparatus	C/AS1-C/AS6, C/VM2
Society of Fire Protection Engineers		
	The Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering, 4th Edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, M.A., USA, 2008	
	Gwynne, S.M.V., and Rosenbaum, E.R., "Employing the Hydraulic Model in Assessing Emergency Movement", Section 3 Chapter 13	C/VM2
Amend 13 Feb 2014	SFPE Engineering Guide to Predicting 1st and 2nd Degree Skin Burns from Thermal Radiation, 2000	C/VM2

United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)

USEPA SW 846: 1986 Test methods for evaluating solid waste

EPA/540/1 – 89/002: 1989 Risk assessment guidance for Superfund,
Vol 1. Human health evaluation manual (Part A)
Interim final. Prepared by USEPA Office of
Emergency and Remedial Response

Amend 12
Oct 2011 | Federal Specification Standard TT-S-00230C: Elastomeric type, cold
applied single component for caulking, sealing,
and glazing in buildings, building areas (plazas,
decks, pavements, and other structures)

Cross-connection Control Manual: 1989

United States Public Health Service

Toxicological profiles on individual chemicals. Prepared by the Agency
for Toxicological Substances and Disease Registry, in collaboration with
the US Environmental Protection Agency

Miscellaneous Publication

Casarett and Doull's Toxicology. The basic science of poisons. 4th ed.
Macmillan. New York 1991. Klassen CD, Amdur MO, Doull J (Eds)

Where quoted

F1/VM1

F1/VM1

E2/AS1, SH/AS1

HB/SS 7

F1/VM1

F1/VM1

Definitions

Many of the definitions in this section come from the Building Act 2004, regulations, including the Building Code, and Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods. Although every effort has been made to ensure definitions are accurate at the time of publication, it is possible that definitions may become out of date as changes occur to the legislation and Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods. In the event there is any discrepancy between the definitions in this section and the definitions in the legislation or Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods, the definitions in the legislation and Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods will prevail.

Note that some legislation and Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods may contain different definitions for the terms listed below. When using particular legislation or an Acceptable Solution or Verification Method, reference should be made to the definitions provided in that document.

Source Key:

BA04	Building Act 2004
BR1	Building Regulations 1992
BR2	Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-prone Buildings) Regulations 2005
Code	New Zealand Building Code
EA	Electricity Act 1992
FSA	Fire Service Act 1975
HB	Handbook
HSNOA	Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996
LGA	Local Government Act 1974 or 2002
PGDA	Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 1976
RA	Railway Act 2005
RMA	Resource Management Act 1991
AS/VM (Code clause)	Acceptable Solution or Verification Method for given Code clause (eg, AS/VM G13)
DG	Building Consent Authority Development Guide
Simple House	Simple House Acceptable Solution

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
A	
Abutment The part of the valley side against which the <i>dam</i> is constructed.	DG
Acceptable risk The level of risk the public is prepared to accept without further management. The risk is the combination of the probability and the consequence of a specified hazardous event.	DG
Acceptable Solution means a solution that must be accepted as complying with the <i>Building Code</i> .	BA04
Access chamber A chamber with working space at <i>drain</i> level through which the <i>drain</i> passes either as an open channel or as a pipe incorporating an <i>inspection point</i> .	AS/VM E1, G13
Access point A place where access may be made to a <i>drain</i> or <i>discharge pipe</i> for inspection, cleaning or maintenance; and may include a <i>cleaning eye</i> , <i>inspection point</i> , <i>rodding point</i> , <i>inspection chamber</i> or <i>access chamber</i> .	AS/VM G13
Access route A continuous route that permits people and goods to move between the apron or <i>construction</i> edge of the <i>building</i> to spaces within a <i>building</i> , and between spaces within a <i>building</i> .	Code

Definition	Source
Accessible Having features to permit use by <i>people with disabilities</i> .	Code
Accessible route An <i>access route</i> usable by <i>people with disabilities</i> . It shall be a continuous route that can be negotiated unaided by a wheelchair user. The route shall extend from street <i>boundary</i> or car parking area to those spaces within the <i>building</i> required to be <i>accessible</i> to enable <i>people with disabilities</i> to carry out normal activities and processes within the <i>building</i> .	Code
Accessible stairway A <i>stairway</i> having features for use by a <i>person with a disability</i> . <i>Buildings</i> required to be <i>accessible</i> shall have at least one <i>accessible stairway</i> leading off an <i>accessible route</i> whether or not a lift is provided.	AS/VM C
Accreditation certificate means a certificate that was issued by the Building Industry Authority under the Building Act 1991.	HB
COMMENT: <i>Accreditation certificates</i> have become product certificates under the <i>Building Act 2004</i> and are subject to the product certification scheme under the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	
Active conductor Any conductor in which the electrical potential differs from that of a neutral conductor or earth.	AS/VM F8
Adequate means <i>Adequate</i> to achieve the objectives of the <i>Building Code</i> .	Code
Adjacent building A nearby <i>building</i> , including an adjoining <i>building</i> , whether or not erected on <i>other property</i> .	Code
Air gap The vertical distance through air between the lowest point of the water supply outlet and the <i>flood level rim</i> of the equipment or the <i>fixture</i> into which the outlet discharges.	AS/VM G12
Air admittance valve A valve that allows air to enter but not to escape in order to limit pressure fluctuations within the sanitary plumbing or drainage system.	AS/VM G13
Air seal A continuous seal fitted between a window or door reveal and the surrounding wall <i>framing</i> to prevent the flow of air into the interior of the <i>building</i> .	AS/VM E2
Allotment has the meaning given to it by section 10 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> . Section 10 states: “(1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, allotment means a parcel of land— (a) that is a continuous area of land; and (b) whose boundaries are shown on a survey plan, whether or not as a subdivision— (i) approved by way of a subdivision consent granted under the Resource Management Act 1991; or (ii) allowed or granted under any other Act; and (c) that is— (i) subject to the Land Transfer Act 1952 and comprised in 1 certificate of title or for which 1 certificate of title could be issued under that Act; or (ii) not subject to that Act and was acquired by its owner under 1 instrument of conveyance	BA04

Definition	Source
<p>(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), an allotment is taken—</p> <p>(a) to be a continuous area of land even if part of it is physically separated from any other part by a road or in any other manner, unless the division of the allotment into those parts has been allowed by a subdivision consent granted under the Resource Management Act 1991 or a subdivision approval under any former enactment relating to the subdivision of land:</p> <p>(b) to include the balance of any land from which any allotment is being or has been subdivided."</p>	
<p>Alter in relation to a <i>building</i>, includes to rebuild, re-erect, repair, enlarge and extend the <i>building</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Alternative solution means a solution that is compliant with the <i>Building Code</i> but is not part of the <i>Compliance Document</i>.</p>	HB
<p>Aluminium flashings Aluminium <i>flashings</i> shall be a minimum thickness of 0.7 mm, and formed from 5000 series in accordance with AS/NZS 1734 and, where pre-painted, have a factory-applied finish complying with AS/NZS 2728.</p>	Simple House
<p>Aluminium-zinc coated steel flashings Aluminium-zinc coated steel flashings shall be:</p> <p>(a) <i>BMT</i> 0.55 mm minimum of steel for <i>flashings</i> generally</p> <p>(b) <i>BMT</i> 0.4 mm of steel for roll-formed roll-top ridge <i>flashings</i></p> <p>(c) in aluminium-zinc coating of AZ150 to AS 1397, with a factory-applied finish in accordance with AS/NZS 2728 Type 4, and in sea spray zone and corrosion zone 1 the factory-applied finish shall be Type 5 minimum.</p>	Simple House
<p>Amenity means an attribute of a <i>building</i> which contributes to the health, physical independence, and well being of the <i>building's</i> users but which is not associated with disease or a specific illness.</p>	Code
<p>Anti-ponding board A board laid under the lowest row of concrete and clay roof tiles and supports the <i>roof underlay</i>. The board is sloped to ensure moisture under the tiles is directed to the exterior of the roof.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Appliance hearth A layer of <i>non-combustible</i> material under or near an appliance. It may be either part of the <i>building</i> structure or an overlay on a <i>combustible</i> floor.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Approved temperature data means the temperature data contained in A I Tomlinson and J Sansom, <i>Temperature Normals for New Zealand for period 1961 to 1990</i> (NIWA, ISBN 0478083343).</p>	Code AS/VM H1
<p>Appurtenant structure, in relation to a <i>dam</i>, means a structure that is integral to the proper functioning of the <i>dam</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Apron flashing A near flat or sloping <i>flashing</i> with a vertical upstand, used at junctions between roofs and walls.</p>	AS/VM E2

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
-------------------	---------------

<p>Asbestos as defined by the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1983 means:</p>	<p>AS/VM F2</p>
---	------------------------

- (a) Actinolite, amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or tremolite; or
- (b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph a) of this definition; or
- (c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of any such mineral; or
- (d) A material or article that is contaminated by any such material.

COMMENT:

Asbestos now has the meaning given to it by Regulation 2 of the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1998. This meaning is:

- (a) Amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous actinolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or fibrous tremolite; or
- (b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or
- (c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or
- (d) A material or article that is contaminated by a mineral specified in paragraph (a):

<p>Atmospheric burner A burner system where all the air for combustion is induced by the inspirating effect of a gas injector and/or by natural draught in the combustion chamber without mechanical assistance.</p>	<p>AS/VM G4</p>
---	------------------------

<p>Attached garage A garage that shares a common <i>wall</i> or <i>walls</i> with a habitable <i>building</i>, and is enclosed by <i>roof</i> and <i>wall claddings</i> that are continuous with the habitable part of the <i>building</i>.</p>	<p>AS/VM E2</p>
--	------------------------

Amend 12
Oct 2011

<p>Authority means the Building Industry Authority that was established under the Building Act 1991.</p>	<p>HB</p>
---	------------------

COMMENT:

The Authority was dissolved under the *Building Act 2004* and its functions and powers transferred to the Department of Building and Housing.

<p>Available safe egress time (ASET) Time available for escape for an individual occupant. This is the calculated time interval between the time of ignition of a fire and the time at which conditions become such that the occupant is estimated to be incapacitated (ie, unable to take effective action to escape to a <i>place of safety</i>).</p>	<p>AS/VM C</p>
--	-----------------------

Amend 13
Feb 2014

B

<p>Backcountry hut means a building that—</p>	<p>Code</p>
--	--------------------

- (a) is located on land that is administered by the Department of Conservation for conservation, recreational, scientific, or other related purposes, including any land administered under any of the following:
 - (i) the Conservation Act 1987;
 - (ii) the National Parks Act 1980;
 - (iii) the Reserves Act 1977; and
- (b) is intended to provide overnight shelter to any person who may visit and who carries his or her own food, bedding, clothing, and outdoor equipment; and
- (c) contains only basic facilities, which may include (but are not limited to) any or all of the following:

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) sleeping platforms or bunks: (ii) mattresses: (iii) food preparation surfaces: (iv) appliances for heating: (v) appliances for cooking: (vi) toilets; and <p>(d) has been certified by the Director-General as being in a location that wheelchair users are unlikely to be able to visit; and</p> <p>(e) is intended to be able to sleep—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) no more than 20 people in its <i>backcountry hut sleeping area</i>; and (ii) no more than 40 people in total; and <p>(f) does not contain any connection, except by <i>radiocommunications</i>, to a <i>network utility operator</i>]</p>	
<p>Backcountry hut sleeping area means the area of a backcountry hut that contains sleeping platforms, bunks, or beds that are—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) within the same room as a food preparation or eating area; or (b) in a fully enclosed room that is separate from any food preparation or eating area and has— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) internal walls that limit the spread of fire; and (ii) the means of direct egress to outside the hut. 	Code
<p>Backflow A flowing back or reversal of the normal direction of the flow caused by <i>back-pressure</i> and includes <i>back-siphonage</i>.</p>	AS/VM -C
<p>Backflow prevention device A device that prevents <i>backflow</i>.</p>	AS/VM C, G12
<p>Backing rod Closed cell polyethylene foam (PEF) rod inserted into gap to provide backing support for foam <i>air seal</i> or <i>sealant</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p>Back-pressure A <i>backflow</i> condition caused by the downstream pressure becoming greater than the supply pressure.</p>	AS/VM G12
<p>Back-siphonage <i>Backflow</i> condition caused by the supply pressure becoming less than the downstream pressure.</p>	AS/VM G12
<p>Baluster A post providing the support for the top and bottom rails of a barrier.</p>	CD-B1, CD-B2
<p>Baluster An infill member that provides support for the top and bottom rails of a barrier.</p>	Simple House
<p>Balustrade The infill parts of a barrier (typically between floor and top rail).</p>	AS/VM B2, F4
<p>Basement Any <i>firecell</i> or part of a <i>firecell</i> below the level of the lowest <i>final exit</i>.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>Because <i>fire safety systems</i> are increased with increases in <i>escape height</i>, the precautions for <i>basements</i> increase with <i>basement</i> depth. Thus a single floor <i>building</i> with one <i>basement</i> level is treated as a two floor <i>building</i>, a single floor <i>building</i> with three <i>basement</i> levels as a four floor <i>building</i>.</p>	

Definition	Source
Base metal thickness (BMT) The thickness of the bare or base metal before any subsequent coating, such as galvanizing.	AS/VM E2
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Batten See ceiling batten, tile batten.	Simple House
Bird's beak A double fold applied to the edge of a horizontal metal <i>flashing</i> to stiffen the edge and to assist in deflecting moisture away from the <i>cladding system</i> below. Refer also <i>Kick-out</i> and <i>Drip edge</i> .	AS/VM E2
COMMENT: A <i>bird's beak</i> is used at the bottom of a <i>capping</i> to deflect water away from the <i>enclosed balustrade cladding</i> .	
Blocking Solid timber having the same depth as the joists and set at right angles between the joists to stiffen and prevent them from buckling.	Simple House
Bond, running or stretcher The <i>bond</i> when the units of each course overlap the units in the preceding course by between 25% and 75% of the length of the units.	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Bottom plate A plate placed under the bottom end of <i>studs</i> .	Simple House
Amend 13 Feb 2014 Boundary means any <i>boundary</i> that is shown on a survey plan that is approved by the Surveyor-General and deposited with the Registrar-General of Land, whether or not a new title has been issued.	AS/VM C
Boundary joist A joist running along the outer ends of the floor joists.	AS/VM B1
Bracing Any method employed to provide lateral support to a <i>building</i> .	Simple House
Bracing capacity Strength of <i>bracing</i> of a whole <i>building</i> or of elements within a <i>building</i> . <i>Bracing capacity</i> is measured in <i>bracing units</i> (BUs).	Simple House
Bracing demand The horizontal forces to be resisted by a whole <i>building</i> or by an element within a <i>building</i> . These horizontal forces are a result of wind or earthquake action. <i>Bracing demand</i> forces are measured in <i>bracing units</i> (BUs).	Simple House
Bracing line A line along or across a <i>building</i> containing <i>wall bracing elements</i> .	Simple House
Bracing rating The lateral load resistance assigned, for example, to a <i>wall bracing system</i> .	Simple House
Bracing unit (BU) A <i>bracing unit</i> is a measure of:	Simple House
(a) the horizontal force (<i>bracing demand</i>) on the <i>building</i> (1 kiloNewton is equal to 20 bracing units)	
(b) the resistance to horizontal force (<i>bracing capacity</i>) of <i>building elements</i> .	
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Branch discharge pipe A <i>discharge pipe</i> that serves one or more <i>fixture discharge pipes</i> for any one floor.	AS/VM G13
Branch vent pipe A <i>vent pipe</i> that serves two or more <i>fixture vent pipes</i> .	AS/VM G13
Building has the meaning given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
Section 8 states:	
"8 Building: what it means and includes:	
(1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, building—	
(a) means a temporary or permanent movable or immovable structure (including a structure intended for occupation by people, animals, machinery, or chattels); and	

Definition	Source
-------------------	---------------

- (b) includes—
 - (i) a mechanical, electrical, or other system; and
 - (ii) a fence as defined in section 2 of the Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987; and
 - 2(1) of the Land Transport Act 1998) that is immovable and is occupied by people on a permanent or long term basis; and
 - (iii) a vehicle or motor vehicle (including a vehicle or motor vehicle as defined in section
 - (iv) a mast pole or a telecommunication aerial that is on, or forms part of, a building and that is more than 7 m in height above the point of its attachment or base support (except a dish aerial that is less than 2 m wide); and
- (c) includes any 2 or more buildings that, on completion of building work, are intended to be managed as one building with a common use and a common set of ownership arrangements; and
- (d) includes the non-moving parts of a cable car attached to or servicing a building; and
- (e) after 30 March 2008, includes the moving parts of a cable car attached to or servicing a building
- (2) Subsection (1)(b)(i) only applies if—
 - (a) the mechanical, electrical, or other system is attached to the structure referred to in subsection (1)(a); and
 - (b) the system—
 - (i) is required by the Building Code; or
 - (ii) if installed, is required to comply with the Building Code.
- (3) Subsection (1)(c) only applies in relation to—
 - (a) subpart 2 of Part 2; and
 - (b) a building consent; and
 - (c) a code compliance certificate; and
 - (d) a compliance schedule.
- (4) This section is subject to section 9.”

Section 9 states:

“9 Building: what it does not include

In this Act, **building** does not include—

- (a) a NUO system, or part of a NUO system, that—
 - (i) is external to the building; and
 - (ii) is connected to, or is intended to be connected to, the building to provide for the successful functioning of the NUO system in accordance with the system’s intended design and purpose; and
 - (iii) is not a mast pole or a telecommunication aerial that is on, or forms part of, a building; or
- (b) cranes (including any cranes as defined in regulations made under the Health and Safety in Employment Act 1992); or
- (c) any of the following, whether or not incorporated within another structure:
 - (i) ski tows;
 - (ii) other similar stand-alone machinery systems; or

Definition	Source
<p>(d) any description of vessel, boat, ferry, or craft used in navigation—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) whether or not it has a means of propulsion; and (ii) regardless of what that means of propulsion is; or <p>(e) aircraft (including any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth); or</p> <p>(f) any offshore installation (as defined in section 222 of the Maritime Transport Act 1994) to be used for petroleum mining; or</p> <p>(g) containers as defined in section 2(1) of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; or</p> <p>(h) magazines as defined in section 222 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; or</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) scaffolding used in the course of the construction process; or (j) falsework.” 	
<p>Building Act 2004 (the Building Act) means the principal legislation dealing with building controls in New Zealand.</p>	HB
<p>COMMENT: The <i>Building Act</i> applies to the construction, alteration, and demolition of new and existing buildings throughout New Zealand.</p>	
<p>Building certifier means a <i>person</i> approved as a <i>building certifier</i> by the <i>Authority</i> under the <i>former Act</i>.</p>	HB
<p>COMMENT: <i>Building certifiers</i> are not provided for under the <i>Building Act 2004</i>. There are no longer any <i>building certifiers</i>.</p>	
<p>Building Code means the regulations made under section 400 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>COMMENT: No regulations have yet been made under section 400 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>. However, the <i>Building Code</i> is currently the First Schedule of the Building Regulations 1992, which continue in force under regulation 8(2) of the Building Forms (Regulations) 2004.</p>	
<p>Building consent means a consent to carry out <i>building work</i> granted by a <i>building consent authority</i> under section 49 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Building consent A consent issued by a building consent authority for building work to begin in accordance with the approved plans and specifications.</p>	Simple House
<p>Building consent accreditation body means the person referred to in section 248(2) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Building consent authority (BCA) means a <i>person</i> whose name is entered in the register referred to in section 273(1)(a) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Building element Any structural and non-structural component and assembly incorporated into or associated with a <i>building</i>. Included are <i>fixtures</i>, services, <i>drains</i>, permanent mechanical installations for access, glazing, partitions, ceilings and temporary supports.</p>	Code

Definition	Source
------------	--------

<p>Building height Building height means the vertical distance between the floor level of the lowest <i>occupied space</i> above the ground and the top of the highest occupied floor, but not including spaces located within or on the roof that enclose stairways, lift shafts, or machinery rooms.</p>	<p>Code</p>
---	--------------------

Amend 13
Feb 2014

<p>Building levy means a levy payable under section 53 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	<p>BA04</p>
--	--------------------

<p>Building method or product has the meaning given to it by section 20 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>. Section 20(2)(c) states:</p>	<p>BA04</p>
--	--------------------

“(c) building methods, methods of construction, building design, or building materials (building methods or products) that have a current product certificate issued under section 269.”

<p>Building performance index (BPI) in relation to a <i>building</i>, means the <i>heating energy</i> of the <i>building</i> divided by the product of the <i>heating degrees total</i> and the sum of the <i>floor area</i> and the <i>total wall area</i>, and so is calculated in accordance with the following formula:</p>	<p>Code</p>
--	--------------------

$$\text{BPI} = \frac{\text{heating energy}}{\text{heating degrees total} \times (\text{floor area} + \text{total wall area})}$$

Amend 11
Sep 2010

<p>Building work—</p>	<p>BA04</p>
------------------------------	--------------------

(a) means work—

- (i) for, or in connection with, the *construction, alteration, demolition, or removal* of a *building*; and
- (ii) on an *allotment* that is likely to affect the extent to which an existing *building* on that *allotment* complies with the *Building Code*; and

(b) includes *sitework*; and

(c) includes design work (relating to *building work*) that is design work of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be restricted *building work* for the purposes of this Act; and

(d) in Part 4, and the definition in this section of “supervise”, also includes design work (relating to building work) of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be *building work* for the purposes of Part 4]

<p>Building warrant of fitness (BWof) means the warrant of fitness an <i>owner</i> of a <i>building</i> must supply to a <i>territorial authority</i> under section 108 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	<p>HB</p>
---	------------------

Amend 12
Oct 2011Amend 11
Sep 2010

<p>Building wrap or building underlay See wall underlay.</p>	<p>Simple House</p>
---	----------------------------

<p>Burnout Means exposure to fire for a time that includes fire growth, full development, and decay in the absence of intervention or automatic suppression, beyond which the fire is no longer a threat to building elements intended to perform loadbearing or fire separation functions, or both.</p>	<p>Code</p>
---	--------------------

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Definition	Source
<p>Butt flashing A preformed wall <i>flashing</i>, used to flash windows and corners on horizontal profiled metal wall <i>cladding</i>. A <i>butt flashing</i> is shaped to underflash the <i>cladding</i>, with the <i>cladding</i> butting against the exposed box portion of the <i>flashing</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Butyl rubber and EPDM flashings <i>Butyl rubber</i> and <i>EPDM flashings</i> shall be a minimum thickness of 1.0 mm, and shall comply with the following parts of Table 1 in ASTM D6134:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) tensile strength (c) elongation (d) water absorption (e) water vapour transmission (f) heat aging followed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i) tensile strength ii) elongation. 	Simple House
C	
<p>Cable car—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) means a vehicle— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) that carries people or goods on or along an inclined plane or a suspended cable; and (ii) that operates wholly or partly outside of a <i>building</i>; <p>And</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (iii) the traction for which is supplied by a cable or any other means; but <p>(b) does not include a lift that carries people or goods between the floors of a <i>building</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Cantilevered deck A <i>deck</i> where no support is provided at the outer extremities of the <i>deck</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>COMMENT: <i>Cantilevered decks</i> are often constructed by extending <i>framing</i> members through the <i>cladding</i> beyond the <i>building</i> face. <i>Cantilevered decks</i> are sometimes known as balconies.</p>	
<p>Canterbury earthquake region is the area contained within the boundaries of the Christchurch City Council, the Selwyn District Council and the Waimakariri District Council.</p>	AS/VM B1
<p>Capacity The load resistance of a connector or fixing.</p>	Simple House
<p>Capping A <i>flashing</i> formed to cover the top of an <i>enclosed balustrade</i> or <i>parapet</i>. Also known as a coping.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Cavity barrier A <i>construction</i> provided to close openings within a <i>concealed space</i> against the passage of <i>fire</i>, or to restrict the spread of <i>fire</i> within such spaces.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Cavity batten A vertical packing member used to create a <i>drained cavity</i> as part of a <i>cladding system</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 12
Oct 2011Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p>Cavity spacer A short block used to provide intermittent support for fixings or pipe penetrations through a <i>drained cavity</i>, while not interrupting drainage within the cavity.</p> <p>A <i>cavity spacer</i> is required to be set to a slight fall (5° minimum from horizontal) to allow drainage of any moisture from the top.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Cavity wall A term used to describe a wall that incorporates a <i>drained cavity</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Ceiling batten A horizontal member fixed below <i>rafters</i>, or truss bottom chords to which the ceiling <i>lining</i> is attached.</p>	Simple House
<p>Certificate of acceptance means a certificate issued under section 96 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Certificate for public use means a certificate issued under section 363A of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	HB
<p>Change the use for the purposes of sections 114 and 115 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>, change the use, in relation to a <i>building</i>, means to change the use (determined in accordance with regulation 6) of all or a part of the <i>building</i> from one use (the old use) to another (the new use) and with the result that the requirements for compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> in relation to the new use are additional to, or more onerous than, the requirements for compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> in relation to the old use.</p>	BR2
<p>Check valve (or non-return valve) A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a <i>backflow prevention device</i>.</p>	AS/VM G12
<p>Chimney A <i>non-combustible</i> structure which encloses one or more <i>flues</i>, <i>fireplaces</i> or other heating appliances.</p>	AS/VM B1, C, G4
<p>Chimney back The <i>non-combustible</i> wall forming the back of a <i>fireplace</i>.</p>	AS/VM B1, C
<p>Chimney base That part of a <i>chimney</i> which houses the <i>fireplace</i>.</p>	AS/VM B1
<p>Chimney breast The front <i>fireplace</i> wall <i>construction</i> above the <i>fireplace</i> opening.</p>	AS/VM B1
<p>Chimney jambs The side walls of a <i>fireplace</i>.</p>	AS/VM B1, C
<p>Cladding The exterior weather-resistant surface of a <i>building</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>COMMENT: Includes any supporting substrate and, if applicable, surface treatment.</p>	
<p>Cladding system The outside or exterior weather-resistant surface of a <i>building</i>; including <i>roof cladding</i> and <i>roof underlays</i>, wall <i>cladding</i> and <i>wall underlays</i>, and cavity components, rooflights, windows, doors and all penetrations, <i>flashings</i>, seals, joints and junctions.</p> <p>Where required by this Acceptable Solution, the <i>cladding system</i> shall include a <i>drained cavity</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Cladding system The weatherproof wall or <i>roof</i> enclosure of a <i>building</i>, including underlays, <i>claddings</i> and their fixings, windows, doors and all penetrations, <i>flashings</i>, seals, joints and junctions.</p>	Simple House
<p>Classified use means a <i>classified use</i> listed in clause A1 of the <i>Building Code</i>.</p>	BR1
<p>Cleaning eye A small <i>diameter access point</i> usually formed as part of a fitting or trap.</p>	AS/VM G13

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 12
Oct 2011Amend 11
Sep 2010

	Definition	Source
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Cleared ground level (CGL) The <i>ground level</i> after completion of site excavation and removal of all harmful material, but before excavation for <i>foundations</i> .	Simple House
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Clearly visible for the purposes of Clause F8 and in relation to a sign means the nearest such sign is visible and readable at the maximum distance from which it needs to be viewed, to a person who either does not have a visual impairment, or uses corrective lenses.	Code
	Code compliance certificate means a certificate issued by a <i>building consent authority</i> under section 95 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
	Combined waste pipe A <i>discharge pipe</i> which serves two or more <i>waste pipes</i> .	AS/VM G13
	Combustible See <i>non-combustible</i> .	AS/VM B1, C
	Combustion appliance A slow combustion stove, a free standing metal cone fireplace, a cast iron pot belly stove, an oil burning space heater, or a vented gas burning heater.	Code
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Common extract duct A mechanical ventilation duct that extracts from different household units, and may contain air, moisture and contaminant.	AS/VM G4
	Common ramp A ramp which is used, or intended to be used by the public whether as of right or not, and is not a <i>service ramp</i> or <i>accessible ramp</i> .	AS/VM D1
	Common stairway A <i>stairway</i> which is used, or intended to be used, by the public whether as of right or not, and is not a <i>private stairway</i> , <i>service stairway</i> or <i>accessible stairway</i> .	AS/VM D1
	Compliance document has the meaning given to it by section 22 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
	Section 22 states: <p>“22. Compliance document for use in establishing compliance with Building Code —</p> <p>(1) The chief executive may, by notice in the Gazette, issue a document for use in establishing compliance with the Building Code (a Compliance Document).</p> <p>(2) A person who complies with a Compliance Document must, for the purposes of this Act, be treated as having complied with the provisions of the Building Code to which the document relates.</p> <p>(3) Subsection (2) is subject to any regulations referred to in section 20”.</p>	
	Compliance schedule means a <i>compliance schedule</i> required under section 100 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
	Compliance schedule statement means a statement issued by a <i>territorial</i> or <i>regional authority</i> referred to in section 105(e) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	HB
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Computational fluid dynamics (CFD) Calculation method that solves equations to represent the movement of fluids in an environment.	AS/VM C
	Concealed space Any part of the space within a <i>building</i> that cannot be seen from an <i>occupied space</i> .	Code

COMMENT:

This term includes any ceiling space, roof space, space under a raised floor (such as computer rooms, floors, or stages), plenums, spaces under a tiered floor, “left-over spaces” created when some structural element or the like has been covered in; small service or duct spaces within the volume of a *firecell* and the like, but not a *protected shaft*.

Definition	Source
<p>Concrete slab shrinkage control joint A line along which the horizontal strength of the slab is deliberately reduced so that any shrinkage in the slab will result in a crack forming along that line.</p>	Simple House
<p>Constant pressure means subjected to the sustained force of fluid forming the reservoir. When there is no water in a reservoir, there is no pressure. When a reservoir is partially filled, there is a constant pressure – in terms of it being a pressure sustained in time.</p>	DG
<p>Construct in relation to a <i>building</i>, includes to design, build, erect, prefabricate, and relocate the <i>building</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Contaminant includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and microorganisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat.</p>	RMA
<p>(a) When discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water, or</p>	
<p>(b) When discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged.</p>	
<p>Controlled area That area where the use of radioactive material or an irradiating apparatus may, in the opinion of the <i>licensee</i>, present a hazard to <i>persons</i> within that area.</p>	AS/VM F8
<p>Control joint A joint designed to prevent damage by accommodating movement. See also <i>Expansion joint</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Cross connection Any actual or potential connection between a <i>potable water</i> supply and a source of contamination.</p>	AS/VM G12
D	
<p>D A deformed reinforcing bar of the stated <i>diameter</i> in millimetres.</p>	Simple House
Dam	BA04
<p>(a) means an artificial barrier, and its appurtenant structures, that—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) is constructed to hold back water or other fluid under constant pressure so as to form a reservoir; and (ii) is used for the storage, control, or diversion of water or other fluid; and (iii) retains 3 or more metres depth, and holds 20,000 or more cubic metres volume, of water or other fluid; and <p>(b) includes—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) a flood control <i>dam</i>; and (ii) a natural feature that has been significantly modified to function as a <i>dam</i>; and (iii) a canal; but <p>(c) does not include a stopbank designed to control floodwaters.</p>	

Definition	Source
COMMENT: 20,000 cubic metres is equivalent to six Olympic size swimming pools. Note: An Olympic swimming pool size is 50 m long x 25 m wide x 2 m deep.	
Dam safety assurance programme means a <i>dam safety assurance programme</i> prepared by an owner of a <i>dam</i> under section 140 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
COMMENT: In order for <i>dams</i> to maintain their integrity ongoing monitoring, maintenance and repair is essential. For those <i>dams</i> classified as medium or high potential impact, <i>dam</i> owners have to prepare and submit a safety assurance programme to the <i>regional authority</i> on an annual basis.	
Dam compliance certificate A certificate issued by the owner of a <i>dam</i> annually stating that all procedures in the <i>dam safety assurance programme</i> have been fully complied with during the previous 12 months.	DG
Damp-proof course (DPC) A narrow strip (generally up to 300 mm wide) of <i>durable vapour barrier</i> placed between <i>building elements</i> to prevent the passage of moisture from one element to another.	AS/VM E2
Damp-proof course (DPC) A narrow strip (generally up to 300 mm wide) of <i>durable vapour barrier</i> greater than 90MN s/g to ASTM E96 and placed between <i>building elements</i> to prevent the passage of moisture from one element to another.	Simple House
Damp-proof membrane (DPM) A sheet material, coating or <i>vapour barrier</i> , having a low water vapour transmission, and used to prevent water and water vapour movement through concrete in contact with the ground. (Also known as a concrete underlay.)	AS/VM B2, E2
Dangerous goods Any materials included in the UN classification, classes 2-5.	AS/VM F8
COMMENT: See <i>Hazardous substance</i> .	
Dangerous goods workroom A room reserved primarily for the use of <i>dangerous goods</i> of Class 3(a) or Class 3(b) (i.e. flammable liquids).	AS/VM F8
Dead end That part of an <i>open path</i> where escape is possible in only one direction.	AS/VM C
COMMENT: A <i>dead end</i> ceases to exist where the <i>escape route</i> reaches a point in the <i>open path</i> which offers alternative directions of travel, or at a <i>final exit</i> or an <i>exitway</i> .	
Deck An open platform projecting from an exterior wall of a <i>building</i> and supported by <i>framing</i> . A <i>deck</i> may be over enclosed internal spaces, or may be open underneath. Refer also <i>Enclosed deck</i> . Also known as a balcony.	AS/VM E2

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010

	Definition	Source
	Department means the Department of Building and Housing.	HB
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Department of Conservation means the department of State established by section 5 of the Conservation Act 1987.	Code
	Design fire Quantitative description of assumed <i>fire</i> characteristics within the <i>design scenario</i> .	AS/VM C
	Design scenario Specific scenario on which a deterministic <i>fire safety engineering</i> analysis is conducted.	AS/VM C
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Detection time Time interval between ignition of a <i>fire</i> and its detection by an automatic or manual system.	AS/VM -C
	Determination means a determination made by the Chief Executive under subpart 1 of Part 3 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
	Developed length The total length along the centre line of a pipe including fittings and bends.	AS/VM G13
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Diagonal brace A member of a framed <i>building</i> fixed diagonally and used to resist tension or compression or both.	Simple House
	Diameter (or bore) The nominal internal <i>diameter</i> .	AS/VM G12, G13
	Direct fixed A term used to describe a wall <i>cladding</i> attached directly to the wall <i>framing</i> , without the use of a <i>drained cavity</i> .	AS/VM E2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Director-General has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Conservation Act 1987.	Code
	Discharge pipe Any pipe that is intended to convey discharge from <i>sanitary fixtures</i> or <i>sanitary appliances</i> .	AS/VM G13
	Discharge stack A <i>discharge pipe</i> that has one or more <i>discharge pipe</i> connections, and which is vented at one end via a <i>discharge stack vent</i> .	AS/VM G13
	Discharge stack vent A <i>vent pipe</i> connected to the top of the <i>discharge stack</i> .	AS/VM G13
	Discharge unit The unit of measure for the discharge (hydraulic load) in the <i>plumbing system</i> , and is based on the rate, duration and frequency of discharge from a <i>sanitary fixture</i> or <i>sanitary appliance</i> .	AS/VM G13
	Doorset A complete assembly comprising a door leaf or leaves including any glazed or solid panels adjacent to or over the leaves within the door frame including hardware or other inbuilt features; and a door frame, if any, with its fixings to the wall and, for a sliding or tilting door, all guides and their respective fixings to the lintel, wall or sill.	AS/VM C, F8
	Dormer or dormer window A framed structure that projects from a sloping roof, and has a window at its outer end.	AS/VM E2
	Drain A pipe normally laid below ground level including fittings and equipment and intended to convey <i>foul water</i> or <i>surface water</i> to an <i>outfall</i> .	Code
	Drained cavity A cavity space, immediately behind a wall <i>cladding</i> , that has vents at the base of the wall. Also known as a drained and vented cavity and referred to in E2/AS1 as a cavity or <i>drained cavity</i> .	AS/VM E2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	<i>A drained cavity</i> assists drying by allowing water which occasionally penetrates the wall <i>cladding system</i> to drain to the exterior of the <i>building</i> , and any remaining	

Definition	Source
moisture to dry by evaporation. Where E2/AS1 requires a nominal 20 mm <i>drained cavity</i> , the depth shall be between limits of 18 mm and 25 mm. For definition of masonry veneer cavity refer to SNZ HB 4236.	
Drain vent pipe Any pipe which is intended to permit the movement of air into and out of the <i>drain</i> and <i>sewer</i> .	AS/VM G13
Draught diverter A device, without moving parts, fitted in the <i>flue</i> of an appliance for isolating the combustion system from the effects of pressure changes in the secondary <i>flue</i> .	AS/VM G4, C
Drip edge Fold(s) applied to the edge of a horizontal metal <i>flashing</i> to deflect moisture away from the <i>cladding system</i> below. Refer also <i>Bird's beak</i> and <i>Kick-out</i> .	AS/VM E2
Durable Resistant to wear and decay.	AS/VM B2
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Dwang A short (usually horizontal) member fixed between vertical <i>framing</i> timbers. Also known as nogging.	AS/VM E2
E	
Amend 13 Feb 2014 Early childhood centre means premises used regularly for the education or care of 3 or more children (not being children of the persons providing the education or care, or children enrolled at a school being provided with education or care before or after school) under the age of six— a) by the day or part of a day; but b) not for any continuous period of more than seven days. ECC does not include home based early childhood services.	AS/VM C
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Eaves That part of the roof <i>construction</i> , including <i>cladding</i> , fascia and eaves gutter (spouting), that extends beyond the exterior face of the wall.	AS/VM E2
Eaves bearer or soffit bearer or sprocket A horizontal member attached to the end of a truss or a <i>rafter</i> and to a <i>stud</i> , or a ribbon board, or a soffit plate, and to which the <i>eaves lining</i> is attached.	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010 EPDM Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer – a thermosetting synthetic rubber. See butyl rubber .	Simple House
EIFS (Exterior Insulation and Finish System) A polystyrene sheet-based <i>cladding system</i> that uses mesh reinforced polymer-modified cement-based or polymer-based plaster base coats and a protective top coating.	AS/VM E2
Electrical fixed appliance An electrical appliance which is fixed-wired to the <i>electrical installation</i> , or intended to remain permanently attached and form part of the <i>building</i> .	Code
Electrical installation Any <i>electrical fixed appliances</i> and components used in the reticulation of electricity, which are intended to remain permanently attached to and form part of the <i>building</i> .	Code
Electrical supply system The source of electricity external to the <i>electrical installation</i> .	Code
Electrolytic corrosion Galvanic corrosion commonly resulting from the contact of two dissimilar metals when an electrolyte such as water is present.	AS/VM E2

Definition	Source
<p>Enclosed balustrade A timber-framed barrier with <i>cladding</i> across all exposed faces. Refer also Parapet.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Amend 12 Oct 2011</p> <p>Enclosed deck A <i>deck</i>, whether over an interior or exterior space, that has an impermeable upper surface and is closed on the underside. May also be known as a balcony.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Energy work means—</p> <p>(a) gasfitting; or</p> <p>(b) prescribed electrical work</p>	BA04
<p>Energy work certificate means a certificate of the kind referred to in section 19(1)(e) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Envelope complexity The categorisation of the complexity of the total <i>building</i> envelope into one of four classes, depending on the particular features of the <i>building</i> as specified in E2/AS1.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>EPDM (Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer) A thermosetting synthetic rubber used as a resilient part of a sealing washer, or as a roof <i>membrane</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p> <p>Equivalent aerodynamic area The area of an equivalent aerodynamically perfect orifice, and equals the penetration area required by the natural ventilation device multiplied by the discharge coefficient determined under test.</p>	AS/VM G4
<p>Escape height The height between the floor level in the <i>firecell</i> being considered and the floor level of the required <i>final exit</i> which is the greatest vertical distance above or below that <i>firecell</i>.</p>	AS/VM C, F3, F6
<p>COMMENT:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. It is necessary only to use the greatest height to the exits required for the <i>firecell</i> being considered, even though the <i>building</i> may have other <i>final exits</i> at lower or higher levels. 2. Where the <i>firecell</i> contains <i>intermediate floors</i>, or upper floors within <i>household units</i> the <i>escape height</i> shall be measured from the floor having the greatest vertical separation from the <i>final exit</i>. 	
<p>Escape route A continuous unobstructed route from any <i>occupied space</i> in a <i>building</i> to a <i>final exit</i> to enable occupants to reach a <i>safe place</i>, and shall comprise one or more of the following: <i>open paths</i>, <i>protected paths</i> and <i>safe paths</i>.</p>	Code
<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>Doors are not obstructions in an <i>escape route</i> provided they comply with C/AS1 Part 3 and D1/AS1.</p>	
<p>Essential service In the context of an <i>electrical installation</i> means emergency lighting, firemen's lifts, alarms, water pumps, sprinklers, detectors, ventilation systems and public address systems necessary for the safety of people in <i>buildings</i>.</p>	Code
<p>Estimated value in relation to <i>building work</i>, means the estimated aggregate of the values, determined in accordance with section 10 of the Goods and Services Tax Act 1985, of all goods and services to be supplied for the <i>building work</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Amend 13 Feb 2014</p> <p>Evacuation time Time interval between the time of warning of a <i>fire</i> being transmitted to the occupants and the time at which the occupants of a specified part of a <i>building</i> or all of the <i>building</i> are able to enter a <i>place of safety</i>.</p>	Code

Definition	Source
Exitway All parts of an <i>escape route</i> protected by <i>fire or smoke separations</i> , or by distance when exposed to open air, and terminating at a <i>final exit</i> .	Code
Expansion joint A joint designed to prevent damage by accommodating movement. See also <i>Control joint</i> .	AS/VM E2
External wall Any exterior face of a <i>building</i> within 30° of vertical, consisting of <i>primary</i> and/or <i>secondary elements</i> intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment, but which may also contain <i>unprotected areas</i> .	Code
COMMENT: A roof is an <i>external wall</i> if within 30° of the vertical.	
Amend 11 Sep 2010 External wall An outer wall of a <i>building</i> .	Simple House
Amend 12 Oct 2011 External wall Any vertical exterior face of a <i>building</i> consisting of <i>primary</i> and/or <i>secondary elements</i> intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment.	AS/VM E2
F	
Factor of safety in relation to any <i>building</i> means the ratio of resisting forces to applied forces for a given loading condition. It is generally expressed to two significant figures.	AS/VM B1
Falsework , in relation to <i>building work</i> or the maintenance of a <i>building</i> ,—` (a) means any temporary structure or framework used to support materials, equipment, or an assembly; and (b) includes steel tubes, adjustable steel props, proprietary frames, or other means used to support a permanent structure until it becomes self-supporting; but (c) does not include scaffolding or cranes used for support.	BA04
Final exit The point at which an <i>escape route</i> terminates by giving direct access to a <i>safe place</i> .	Code
COMMENT: <i>Final exits</i> are commonly the external doors from a ground floor, but this applies only if such doors open directly onto a <i>safe place</i> . If a <i>safe place</i> can be reached only by passing down an alley, or across a bridge, then the <i>final exit</i> is not reached until the end of such an alley or bridge. <i>Final exits</i> , therefore, should be seen strictly as a point of arrival, rather than as any particular element of a <i>building</i> . They are determined entirely by the definition of <i>safe place</i> .	
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Finished ground level (FGL) The level of the ground against any part of a <i>building</i> after all backfilling and/or landscaping and/or surface paving has been completed.	AS/VM E2
Fire The state of combustion during which flammable materials burn producing heat, toxic gases, or smoke or flame or any combination of these.	Code
Firecell Any space including a group of contiguous spaces on the same or different levels within a <i>building</i> , which is enclosed by any combination of <i>fire separations</i> , <i>external walls</i> , roofs, and floors.	Code
COMMENT: Floors, in this context, includes ground floors and those in which the underside is exposed to the external environment (eg, when cantilevered). Note also that internal floors between <i>firecells</i> are <i>fire separations</i> .	

Definition	Source	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Fire damper A device with a specified <i>FRR</i> complete with fixings and operating mechanism for automatically closing off an airway where it passes through a <i>fire separation</i> .	AS/VM C
	COMMENT: An airway may be a duct, plenum, ceiling space, roof space or similar <i>construction</i> used for the passage of ventilating air.	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Fire decay Stage of <i>fire</i> development after a <i>fire</i> has reached its maximum intensity and during which the <i>heat release rate</i> and the temperature of the <i>fire</i> are decreasing.	AS/VM C
	Fire door A <i>doorset</i> , single or multi-leaf, having a specific <i>fire resistance rating</i> , and in certain situations a smoke control capability, and forming part of a <i>fire separation</i> . The door, in the event of <i>fire</i> , if not already closed, will close automatically and be self latching.	AS/VM C
	COMMENT: Requirements for fire doors are given in C/AS1 Paragraphs 6.19.1 and 6.19.8 and Appendix C, Paragraph C 8.1.	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Fire growth Stage of <i>fire</i> development during which the <i>heat release rate</i> and the temperature of the <i>fire</i> are increasing.	AS/VM C
	Fire hazard means the danger of potential harm and degree of exposure arising from—	BA04
	(a) the start and spread of <i>fire</i> ; and	
	(b) the smoke and gases that are generated by the start and spread of <i>fire</i> .	
	Fire hazard category (FHC) The number (graded 1 to 4 in order of increasing severity), used to classify <i>purpose groups</i> or activities having a similar <i>fire hazard</i> , and where fully developed <i>fires</i> are likely to have similar impact on the structural stability of the <i>building</i> .	AS/VM C
	COMMENT: <i>Fire hazard categories</i> are identified in C/AS1 Table 2.1.	
	Fire intensity The rate release of calorific energy in watts, determined either theoretically or empirically, as applicable.	Code
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Fire load Quantity of heat which can be released by the complete combustion of all the <i>combustible</i> materials in a volume, including the facings of all bounding surfaces (Joules).	AS/VM C/VM2
	Fire load The sum of the net calorific values of the <i>combustible</i> contents which can reasonably be expected to burn within a <i>firecell</i> , including furnishings, built-in and removable materials, and <i>building elements</i> . The calorific values shall be determined at the ambient moisture content or humidity. (The unit of measurement is MJ.)	Code

Definition	Source	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Fire load energy density (FLED) <i>Fire load per unit area (MJ/M²).</i>	AS/VM C
	Fireplace A space formed by the <i>chimney back</i> , the <i>chimney jambs</i> , and the <i>chimney breast</i> in which fuel is burned for the purpose of heating the room into which it opens.	AS/VM B1, C
	Fire resistance rating (FRR) The term used to describe the minimum <i>fire</i> resistance required of <i>primary</i> and <i>secondary elements</i> as determined in the <i>standard test</i> for <i>fire</i> resistance, or in accordance with a specific calculation method verified by experimental data from standard <i>fire</i> resistance tests. It comprises three numbers giving the time in minutes for which each of the criteria <i>structural adequacy</i> , <i>integrity</i> and <i>insulation</i> are satisfied, and is presented always in that order.	AS/VM C
Amend 13 Feb 2014	<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>1. Examples of <i>FRRs</i> are:</p> <p>(a) 60/60/30 indicating <i>structural adequacy</i> 60 minutes, <i>integrity</i> 60 minutes, <i>insulation</i> 30 minutes.</p> <p>b) 30/-/- indicating <i>structural adequacy</i> 30 minutes, but no time requirement for <i>integrity</i> or <i>insulation</i>.</p> <p>c) 60/30/x indicating <i>structural adequacy</i> of 60 minutes, <i>integrity</i> of 30 minutes, and a requirement for <i>insulation</i>.</p> <p>2. C/AS1–7 Part 2 gives more information on <i>FRRs</i>.</p>	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Fire resisting closure A <i>fire</i> rated device or assembly for closing an opening through a <i>fire separation</i> .	Code
Amend 13 Feb 2014	<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>A <i>fire resisting closure</i> is intended to include <i>fire doors</i>, <i>fire windows</i> or access panels. In this context the opening may be used to permit passage of people or goods, or to transmit light, but does not include an opening to permit the passage of <i>building services</i>.</p>	
	Fire resisting glazing Fixed or openable glazing, complete with frame and fixings, mullions, transoms and glazing beads, with a specified <i>FRR</i> and complying with NZS 4232: Part 2.	AS/VM C
	<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>1. The requirement for <i>fire resisting glazing</i> will not be met by ordinary window glass, or safety glasses, but rather by wired glass, or by special <i>fire</i> resisting glass shown by test to perform adequately. The nature and design of the frames also have an effect on the performance of <i>fire resisting glazing</i>.</p> <p>2. Openable glazing is required by NZS 4232 Part 2 to be fitted with an automatic device which, in the event of <i>fire</i>, will close and latch the window sash.</p>	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Fire retardant A substance or a treatment, incorporated in or applied to a material, which suppresses or delays the combustion of that material under specified conditions.	AS/VM C
	Fire safety engineering Application of engineering methods based on scientific principles to the development or assessment of designs in the built environment through the analysis of specific <i>design scenarios</i> or through the quantification of risk for a group of <i>design scenarios</i> .	AS/VM C

Definition	Source
<p>Fire safety systems means the combination of all active and passive protection methods used in a <i>building</i> to—</p> <p>(a) warn people of an emergency; and</p> <p>(b) provide for safe evacuation; and</p> <p>(c) provide for access by, and the safety of, firefighters; and</p> <p>(d) restrict the spread of <i>fire</i>; and</p> <p>(e) limit the impact of <i>fire</i> on structural stability</p>	Code
Amend 13 Feb 2014	
<p>Fire separation Any <i>building element</i> which separates <i>firecells</i> or <i>firecells</i> and <i>safe paths</i>, and provides a specific <i>fire resistance rating</i>.</p> <p>Fire shutter A <i>fire</i> rated device, complete with fixings and operating mechanism, for automatically closing off an opening in a <i>fire separation</i> or <i>protected shaft</i>.</p> <p>Fire stop A material or method of <i>construction</i> used to restrict the spread of <i>fire</i> within or through <i>fire separations</i>, and having a <i>FRR</i> no less than that of the <i>fire separation</i>.</p>	Code AS/VM C AS/VM C
COMMENT:	
<i>Fire stops</i> are mainly used to seal around <i>penetrations</i> , but can also be used to seal narrow gaps between <i>building elements</i> .	
<p>Fixture An article intended to remain permanently attached to and form part of a <i>building</i>.</p> <p>Fixture discharge pipe A <i>discharge pipe</i> that is used to convey waste from a single <i>sanitary fixture</i> or <i>sanitary appliance</i> to a <i>branch discharge pipe</i>, a <i>discharge stack</i>, or directly to a <i>drain</i>. It does not include any pipes forming part of a <i>sanitary appliance</i>.</p> <p>Fixture vent pipe (trap vent) A <i>vent pipe</i> that is connected to a <i>fixture discharge pipe</i> or the <i>sanitary fixture</i> itself.</p>	Code AS/VM G13 AS/VM G13
Amend 13 Feb 2014	
<p>Flame safeguard system A system consisting of a flame detector(s) plus associated circuitry, integral components, valves and interlocks the function of which is to shut off the fuel supply to the burner(s) in the event of ignition failure or flame failure.</p> <p>Flammability index (FI) That index number for flammability, which is determined according to the <i>standard test</i> method for flammability of thin flexible materials.</p> <p>Flashing A component, formed from a rigid or flexible <i>waterproof</i> material, that drains or deflects water back outside the <i>cladding system</i>.</p>	AS/VM G11 AS/VM C AS/VM E2
Amend 13 Feb 2014	
<p>Flashover Stage of <i>fire</i> transition to a state of total surface involvement in a <i>fire</i> of <i>combustible</i> materials within an enclosure.</p>	AS/VM C
Amend 11 Sep 2010	
<p>Flexible flashing tape A flexible self-adhesive <i>waterproof</i> tape. Usually used as an accessory for <i>wall underlays</i>, to seal corners and intersections.</p>	AS/VM E2

Definition	Source
Flexible flashing tape A flexible self-adhesive <i>waterproof</i> tape. Usually used as an accessory for <i>wall underlays</i> to seal corners and intersections	Simple House
Flood level rim The top edge at which water can overflow from equipment or a <i>fixture</i> .	AS/VM G12
Floor area , in relation to a <i>building</i> , means the <i>floor area</i> (expressed in square metres) of all interior spaces used for activities normally associated with domestic living.	Code
Floor waste An outlet located at the low point of a graded floor or in a level floor designed to receive accidental or intentional discharges.	AS/VM E3, G13
Floor waste gully A disconnecter gully for installation inside a <i>building</i> , for use with a floor grating or waste outlet fitting on a riser pipe and with provision, where required, for connection of waste pipes for <i>sanitary fixtures</i> .	Simple House
Floor waste pipe A pipe that receives the discharge from a <i>floor waste</i> and that discharges outside the <i>building</i> or to the <i>foul water</i> drainage or sanitary <i>plumbing system</i> .	AS/VM G13
Flue The passage through which the products of combustion are conveyed to the outside.	AS/VM B1, B2, C, G4, G11
Flue liner Pipes or linings of <i>fire</i> clay, metal or <i>fire</i> brick, surrounding <i>flues</i> .	AS/VM C
Flue system A series of interconnecting <i>flue</i> pipe casings which form a safe passage (<i>flue</i>) for conveying products of combustion from within an appliance to the outside of a <i>building</i> or structure.	AS/VM C
Flush-finished The description of a <i>cladding</i> and joints system which relies on a protective coating applied to the face of the <i>cladding</i> to prevent the penetration of water.	AS/VM E2
Foamed plastics <i>Combustible</i> foamed plastic polymeric materials of low density (typically less than 100 kg/m ³) and are classified as cellular polymers which are manufactured by creating a multitude of fine voids (typically 90 to 98%) distributed more or less uniformly throughout the product. Examples of <i>foamed plastics</i> are latex foams, polyethylene foams, polyvinyl chloride foams, expanded or extruded polystyrene foams, phenolic foams, ureaformaldehyde foams, polyurethane foams and polychloropene foams.	AS/VM C
COMMENT:	
1. <i>Foamed plastics</i> may be rigid or flexible, but rigid foams are the most common in <i>building</i> products. When burnt they tend to generate high levels of heat energy (kJ/kg) and varying quantities of smoke and other toxic gases depending on the nature and volume of the particular product.	
2. Where doubt exists as to whether a <i>building</i> material is <i>foamed plastics</i> , an opinion should be sought from a <i>person</i> or organisation with appropriate skill and experience in <i>fire</i> engineering. That opinion should be included with the <i>building consent</i> application to the <i>building consent authority</i> .	
Footing That portion of a <i>foundation</i> bearing on the ground and any adjoining portion that is reinforced so as to resist the bearing forces.	Simple House

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
Forced or induced draught appliance An appliance where all or part of the air for combustion is provided by a fan or other mechanical device which is an integral part of the combustion system.	AS/VM G4
Former Act means the Building Act 1991.	BA04
Foul water The discharge from any <i>sanitary fixture</i> or <i>sanitary appliance</i> .	Code
Foul water drainage system <i>Drains</i> , joints and fittings normally laid underground and used specifically for the conveyance of water from the <i>plumbing system</i> to an <i>outfall</i> .	Code
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Foundation Those parts of a <i>building</i> transmitting and distributing loads to the ground through a <i>footing</i> .	Simple House
Fractional effective dose (FED) The fraction of the dose (of carbon monoxide (CO) or thermal effects) that would render a person of average susceptibility incapable of escape.	
Amend 13 Feb 2014 COMMENT: The definition for FED has been modified from the ISO definition to be made specific for Verification Method C/VM2. The ISO definition is "Ratio of the exposure dose for an insult to that exposure dose of the insult expected to produce a specified effect on an exposed subject of average susceptibility."	
Framing Timber members to which <i>lining</i> , <i>cladding</i> , flooring, or decking is attached; or which are depended upon for supporting the structure, or for resisting forces applied to it.	AS/VM E2
Free outlet (push through) In the context of <i>storage water heaters</i> means a <i>water heater</i> with a tap on the cold water inlet so designed that the hot water is discharged through an open outlet.	AS/VM G12
Amend 13 Feb 2014 Fully developed fire State of total involvement of <i>combustible</i> materials in a <i>fire</i> .	AS/VM C
Functional requirements in relation to a <i>building</i> , means those functions which a <i>building</i> is to perform for the purposes of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
G	
Gable Triangular part of an <i>external wall</i> between the planes of the <i>roof</i> and the line of the <i>eaves</i> .	Simple House
Galvanised steel flashings Galvanised steel <i>flashings</i> shall be:	Simple House
(a) <i>BMT</i> of 0.55 mm minimum for <i>flashings</i> generally	
(b) <i>BMT</i> of 0.4 mm minimum for roll-formed roll-top ridge <i>flashings</i>	
(c) Hot-dipped zinc coated Z275 with a factory-applied finish that complies with AS/NZS 2728 Type 4, and in Sea Spray and corrosion Zone 1 the factory-applied finish shall be Type 5 minimum.	
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Gantry A structure covering a public way providing protection from both the side and overhead.	AS/VM F5

Definition

Source

Gasfitting has the meaning given to it by section 2 of the Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 1976.

BA04/PGDA

Section 2 states:

- “(a) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) beyond the outlet of any gas measurement system supplying a consumer or gas refueller with gas (or, where there is no such gas measurement system, beyond the custody transfer point of the place at which gas is supplied to a consumer or gas refueller);
- (b) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) that convey gas from any gas storage container in the possession or control of a consumer or gas refueller, and—
- (i) In the case of liquefied petroleum gas, that are downstream of the first regulator beyond that container; or
- (ii) In the case of any other gas or where there is no such regulator (in the case of liquefied petroleum gas), that are downstream of the outlet valve of the container;
- (c) The work of fixing or unfixing the whole or part of the control system of any gas appliance—
but does not include—
- (d) Work on any gas storage container, including its fixing or unfixing; or
- (e) Work on any gas transmission system or distribution system; or
- (f) Work on any pipes or fittings supplied with liquefied petroleum gas from any gas storage container or containers that contains, or together contain, less than 15 kilograms net weight of liquefied petroleum gas; or
- (g) Work in any circumstances where the exclusions in section 3(2) of the Gas Act 1992 apply:”

Gather That part of a *chimney* where the transition from *fireplace* to stack occurs.

AS/VM B1

Good ground means any soil or rock capable of permanently withstanding an ultimate bearing pressure of 300 kPa (i.e. an allowable bearing pressure of 100 kPa using a *factor of safety* of 3.0), but excludes:

AS/VM B1

- (a) Potentially compressible ground such as topsoil, soft soils such as clay which can be moulded easily in the fingers, and uncompacted loose gravel which contains obvious voids,
- (b) Expansive soils being those that have a liquid limit of more than 50% when tested in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.2, and a linear shrinkage of more than 15% when tested, from the liquid limit, in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.6, and
- (c) Any ground which could foreseeably experience movement of 25 mm or greater for any reason including one or a combination of: land instability, ground creep, subsidence, (liquefaction, lateral spread – for the *Canterbury earthquake region* only), seasonal swelling and shrinking, frost heave, changing ground water level, erosion, dissolution of soil in water, and effects of tree roots.

Definition	Source
<p>COMMENT: Soils (excepting those described in (a), (b) and (c) above) tested with a dynamic cone penetrometer in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 6.5.2, shall be acceptable as <i>good ground</i> for <i>building</i> foundations if penetration resistance is no less than:</p> <p>(a) 5 blows per 100 mm at depths down to twice the footing width.</p> <p>(b) 3 blows per 100 mm at depths greater than twice the footing width.</p> <p>Depths shall be measured from the underside of the proposed footing.</p> <p>Good ground Any soil or rock capable of permanently withstanding an ultimate bearing pressure of 300 kPa (ie, an allowable bearing pressure of 100 kPa using a <i>factor of safety</i> of 3.0) but excluding:</p> <p>(a) potentially compressible ground such as top soil, soft soils such as clay which can be moulded easily in the fingers, and uncompacted loose gravel which contains obvious voids;</p> <p>(b) expansive soils being those that have a liquid limit of more than 50% when tested in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.2, and a linear shrinkage of more than 15% when tested from the liquid limit in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.6, and</p> <p>(c) any ground which could foreseeably experience movement of 25 mm or greater for any reason including one or a combination of: land instability, ground creep, subsidence, seasonal swelling and shrinkage, frost heave, changing ground water level, erosion, dissolution of soil in water, and effects of tree roots.</p> <p>(Note that soils, excepting those described in (a), (b) and (c) above, tested with a dynamic cone penetrometer in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 6.5.2, shall be acceptable as <i>good ground</i> for <i>building foundations</i> if penetration resistance is no less than:</p> <p>(i) 3 blows per 75 mm at depths no greater than the footing width</p> <p>(ii) 2 blows per 75 mm at depths greater than the footing width.</p> <p>Depths shall be measured from the underside of the proposed <i>footing</i>.)</p>	Simple House
<p>Grease trap A device designed to intercept grease in a <i>foul water</i> discharge.</p>	AS/VM G13, AS/VM G14
<p>Gross floor area The area contained within the outside face of the exterior timber wall <i>framing</i> of a <i>simple house</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p>Ground level See cleared ground level, finished ground level.</p>	Simple House
<p>Group Number The classification number for a material used as a finish, surface, lining, or attachment to a wall or ceiling within an <i>occupied space</i> and determined according to the <i>standard test</i> methods for measuring the properties of lining materials.</p>	Code
<p>COMMENT: The method for determining a Group Number is described in C/VM2 Appendix A.</p>	

Amend 13
Feb 2014Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 13
Feb 2014

Definition

Source

Group sleeping area A *firecell* containing communal sleeping accommodation for a specified number of people who may or may not be known to one another. Partial subdivision within the *firecell* is permitted with specific limitation including that no *occupied space* is fully enclosed and all *occupied spaces* are open and available to all occupants at any time. A *group sleeping area firecell* may include spaces for associated direct support functions, such as hygiene facilities and tea making (not cooking) activities, for use by the occupants. It does not include spaces, such as waiting rooms, lounges, dining rooms or kitchens, providing a communal service function for all occupants.

AS/VM C

COMMENT:

1. Examples of *group sleeping area firecells* are dormitories, hospital wards, *wharenui*, backpacker hostels and ski lodges.
2. The maximum number of people permitted in a *group sleeping area firecell*, and the permitted form of subdivision, will depend on the ability of the occupants to react to the presence of *fire* and escape to a *safe place*.

Gully trap A fitting designed to prevent foul air escaping from the drainage system and used to receive the discharge from *waste pipes*.

AS/VM G13

H

Habitable space A space used for activities normally associated with domestic living, but excludes any bathroom, laundry, water closet, pantry, walk-in wardrobe, corridor, hallway, lobby, clothes-drying room, or other space of a specialised nature occupied neither frequently nor for extended periods.

Code

Handrail A rail to provide support to, or assist with the movement of a *person*.

Code

Hazardous Creating an unreasonable risk to people of bodily injury or deterioration of health.

Code

Hazardous substance Has the meaning given to it by section 2 of the Fire Service Act 1975 and section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996

Code/FSA/
HSNOA

Section 2 of the Fire Service Act 1975 states:

“**Hazardous substance**” means

- (a) Any hazardous substance as defined in section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; and
- (b) Any infectious or radioactive substance that may impair human, animal, or plant” health:

Section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 states:

“**Hazardous substance**” means, unless expressly provided otherwise by regulations, any substance—

- (a) With one or more of the following intrinsic properties:
 - (i) Explosiveness:
 - (ii) Flammability:
 - (iii) A capacity to oxidise

Definition	Source
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (iv) Corrosiveness: (v) Toxicity (including chronic toxicity) (vi) Ecotoxicity, with or without bioaccumulation; or <p>(b) Which on contact with air or water (other than air or water where the temperature or pressure has been artificially increased or decreased) generates a substance with any one or more of the properties specified in paragraph (a) of this definition."</p>	
<p>Hearth The insulating floor under the <i>fire</i> and in front and at the sides of the <i>fireplace</i>.</p>	AS/VM B1,CC
<p>Heating degrees, in relation to a location and a <i>heating month</i>, means the degrees obtained by subtracting from a base temperature of 14°C the mean (calculated using the <i>approved temperature data</i>) of the outdoor temperatures at that location during that month.</p>	Code
<p>Heating degrees total, in relation to a location and a year, means whichever is the greater of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the value of 12 and (b) the sum of all the <i>heating degrees</i> (calculated using the <i>approved temperature data</i>) for all of the <i>heating months</i> of the year. 	Code
<p>Heating energy, in relation to a <i>building</i>, means the energy from a <i>network utility operator</i> or a depletable resource (expressed in kilowatt-hours, and calculated using the Building Research Association of New Zealand's <i>ALF 3, The 'Annual Loss Factor' Method, A design tool for energy efficient houses</i> (3rd edition, April 2000) or some other method that can be correlated with that manual) needed to maintain the <i>building</i> at all times within a year at a constant internal temperature under the following standard conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) a continuous temperature of 20°C throughout the <i>building</i> (b) an air change rate of 1 change per hour or the actual air leakage rate, whichever is the greater (c) a heat emission contribution arising from internal heat sources for any period in the year of 1000 kilowatt-hours for the first 50 m² of <i>floor area</i>, and 10 kilowatt-hours for every additional square metre of <i>floor area</i> (d) no allowance for— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) carpets or (ii) blinds, curtains, or drapes, on windows (e) windows to have a shading coefficient of 0.6 (made up of 0.8 for windows and recesses and 0.75 for site shading). 	Code
<p>Heating month, in relation to a location, means a month in which a base temperature of 14°C is greater than the mean (calculated using the <i>approved temperature data</i>) of the outdoor temperatures at that location during that month.</p>	Code
<p>Heat of combustion Thermal energy produced by combustion of unit mass of a given substance (kJ/g).</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Heat release Thermal energy produced by combustion (Joules).</p>	AS/VM C

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Definition	Source
<p>Amend 13 Feb 2014</p> <p>Heat release rate (HRR) Rate of thermal energy production generated by combustion (kW or MW).</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Hem A flat fold, not completely closed, applied to the edge of a metal <i>flashing</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Hidden gutter A gutter located within the boundaries of the roof <i>framing</i>. <i>Hidden gutters</i> may also be known as secret gutters or internal gutters. See also <i>Valley gutters</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>COMMENT: <i>Hidden gutters</i> are distinct from gutters or spouting that are externally located beyond the bounds of the roof and wall <i>framing</i>.</p>	
<p>Hoarding A structure alongside a public way providing side protection but no overhead protection.</p>	AS/VM F5
<p>Hold-open device A device which holds a <i>smoke control door</i> or <i>fire door</i> open during normal use, but is released by deactivating the device by an automatic <i>fire</i> detection system, allowing the door to close automatically under the action of a self-closing device.</p>	AS/VM C, F7, F8
<p>Hook An open fold applied to the edge of a metal <i>flashing</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>COMMENT: A <i>hook</i> is distinct from a <i>hem</i>, as it is open at an acute angle rather than flattened.</p>	
<p>Household unit</p> <p>(a) means a <i>building</i> or group of <i>buildings</i>, or part of a <i>building</i> or group of <i>buildings</i>, that is—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) used, or intended to be used, only or mainly for residential purposes; and</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) occupied, or intended to be occupied, exclusively as the home or residence of not more than 1 household; but</p> <p>(b) does not include a hostel, boarding house, or other specialised accommodation.</p>	BA04
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p> <p>Household unit For a <i>simple house</i>, means a <i>building</i> or part of a <i>building</i> that is used or intended to be used for residential purposes.</p>	Simple House
<p>HVAC An abbreviation for heating, ventilating and airconditioning.</p>	AS/VM C, F7
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p> <p>HVAC system for the purposes of performance H1.3.6 and in relation to a building, means a mechanical, electrical, or other system for modifying air temperature, modifying air humidity, providing ventilation, or doing all or any of those things, in a space within the building.</p>	Code
I	
<p>Illuminance The luminous flux falling onto a unit area of surface.</p>	Code
<p>Impact insulation class (IIC) A single number rating derived from measured values of normalized impact sound pressure levels in accordance with Method ASTM E 492, Annex A1, Laboratory Measurement of Impact Sound Transmission Through Floor-Ceiling Assemblies Using the Tapping Machine. It provides an estimate of the impact sound insulating performance of a floor-ceiling assembly.</p>	Code

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Definition	Source
Impervious That which does not allow the passage of moisture.	Code
Importance level As specified in Clause A3 of the <i>Building Code</i> .	AS/VM C
Incapacitated State of physical inability to accomplish a specific task.	AS/VM C
Independent qualified person (IQP) means a <i>person</i> accepted by a <i>territorial authority</i> in accordance with section 438 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> as being qualified to carry out the inspection, maintenance, and reporting procedures required for a <i>specified system</i> stated in a <i>compliance schedule</i> .	HB
Inspection chamber A chamber with working space at ground level through which the <i>drain</i> passes either as an open channel or as a pipe incorporating an <i>inspection point</i> .	AS/VM E1, G13
Inspection point A removable cap at <i>drain</i> level through which access may be made for cleaning and inspecting the drainage system.	AS/VM E1, G13
Insulating material A material that has a thermal conductivity of less than 0.07 W/mK.	AS/VM C, E3
Insulation In the context of <i>fire</i> protection, the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen of a <i>fire separation</i> , when subjected to the <i>standard test</i> for <i>fire</i> resistance, has limited the transmission of heat through the specimen.	Code
Integrity In the context of <i>fire</i> protection, the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen of a <i>fire separation</i> , when subjected to the <i>standard test</i> for <i>fire</i> resistance, has prevented the passage of flame or hot gases.	Code
COMMENT: The precise meaning of <i>integrity</i> depends on the type of <i>building elements</i> being treated and how it is defined in the <i>standard test</i> being used.	
Intended use in relation to a <i>building</i> ,—	BA04
(a) includes any or all of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) any reasonably foreseeable occasional use that is not incompatible with the <i>intended use</i>; (ii) normal maintenance; (iii) activities undertaken in response to <i>fire</i> or any other reasonably foreseeable emergency; but 	
(b) does not include any other maintenance and repairs or rebuilding.	
Interceptor trap A device which will separate and retain desired liquids and solids from a liquid stream and which will provide a water barrier to prevent foul air or gas from entering any downstream system.	AS/VM G14
Intermediate floor Any upper floor within a <i>firecell</i> which because of its configuration provides an opening allowing smoke or <i>fire</i> to spread from a lower to an upper level within the <i>firecell</i> .	AS/VM C
COMMENT: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Upper floors within <i>household units</i> need not meet the specific <i>fire</i> safety requirements which apply to <i>intermediate floors</i> in all other situations. 2. An <i>intermediate floor</i> may be open to the <i>firecell</i> or enclosed with non-<i>fire</i> rated <i>construction</i>. If enclosed with <i>fire</i> rated walls another <i>firecell</i> is created. 	

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Definition

Source

3. *Household units* occur only in *risk groups* SM and SH. Life safety provisions are governed by the limitations in permitted *open path* lengths.
4. *Risk groups* SM, SI, CA, WB, WS and VP allow limited area intermediate floors of 20% or 40% of the floor area depending on other fire safety requirements. In other situations C/VM2 is to be used.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Internal wall A wall other than an *external wall*.

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Simple House

K

Kerb ramp means a short ramp either cutting through a kerb or built up to the kerb.

AS/VM D1

Kick-out A single fold applied to the edge of a horizontal metal *flashing* to deflect moisture away from the *cladding system* below. Refer also *Bird's beak*.

AS/VM E2

COMMENT:

A *kick-out* is used at the bottom of a *capping* or other *flashing* to deflect water away from the *cladding* below.

L

Lead flashings Lead sheet *flashings* that:

Simple House

- (a) comply with AS 1804, and
(b) have a minimum unit mass of 17 kg/m².

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Life rating The *fire resistance rating* to be applied to elements of *construction* that allows movement of people from their location in a *building* to a *safe place*.

AS/VM C

Licensee A *person* holding a licence issued under the Radiation Protection Act 1965 and for the time being in force.

AS/VM F8

Licensed building practitioner means a building practitioner whose name is, for the time being, entered in the register established and maintained under section 298(1) of the *Building Act 2004*.

BA04

Lightweight wall cladding Timber weatherboard (bevel-back or rusticated) or flat sheet (plywood or fibre-cement) *wall claddings* for use in this [Simple House] *Acceptable Solution*.

Simple House

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Limited area atrium A single *firecell* in which individual *occupied spaces* at different levels open onto a common enclosed space. Limitations are placed on the number of *intermediate floors* (no more than two levels), individual floor areas and permitted *occupant load*, depending on the provisions for smoke detection, smoke control and the *means of escape from fire*.

AS/VM C

COMMENT:

Typical *limited area atrium buildings* are small shopping malls, and motel complexes with a central atrium feature open to a number of floors.

Lining The rigid sheet covering for a wall, ceiling or other interior surface.

AS/VM E2

Lintel A horizontal *framing* member spanning an opening in a wall.

Simple House

Loadbearing stud A *stud* in a *loadbearing wall*.

Simple House

Loadbearing wall A wall supporting vertical loading from a *roof*.

Simple House

Amend 11
Sep 2010

	Definition	Source
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Loaded dimension The loaded dimension of structural elements which support other members at right angles. Refer to [SH/AS1] Figure 5.2.2.	Simple House
	Lock-out The safety shut down condition of the control system such that re-start cannot be accomplished without manual resetting.	AS/VM-C, G11
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Luminance The luminous intensity of a surface in a given direction per unit projected area (candela m ²)	AS/VMF8
	M	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	M A steel bolt of the stated <i>diameter</i> in millimetres.	Simple House
	Main private stairway A <i>private stairway</i> intended to provide access to and between frequently used spaces such as living areas, kitchens and garages, and includes all exterior <i>private stairways</i> .	AS/VMD1
	Masonry tiles Clay or concrete tile roof <i>cladding</i> .	AS/VME2
	Masonry veneer Clay or concrete block veneer <i>cladding</i> .	AS/VME2
	Means of escape from fire , in relation to a <i>building</i> that has a floor area,— (a) means continuous unobstructed routes of travel from any part of the floor area of that <i>building</i> to a place of safety, and (b) includes all active and passive protection features required to warn people of <i>fire</i> and to assist in protecting people from the effects of <i>fire</i> in the course of their escape from the <i>fire</i> .	BA04
	COMMENT: Means of escape include features providing visibility in escape routes complying with F6 and signs complying with F8	
Amend 13 Feb 2014		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Member span The clear distance between supports, measured along the member.	Simple House
	Membrane A non-metallic material, usually synthetic, used as a fully supported roof <i>cladding</i> , <i>deck</i> surface or, in conjunction with other <i>claddings</i> , as gutters or <i>flashings</i> .	AS/VME2
	Minister means the Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of a warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is responsible for the administration of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
	Minor private stairway A <i>private stairway</i> not on a main thoroughfare, and intended to provide infrequent access to a single room which is not a living area or kitchen.	AS/VM D1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	MSG Machine stress graded refers to timber that is initially sorted by machine, calibrated to NZS 3603. See also VSG .	Simple House
	Multi-unit dwelling Applies to a <i>building</i> or use which contains more than one separate household or family.	AS/VM C
	COMMENT: For <i>fire</i> safety purposes each <i>household unit</i> is a separate <i>firecell</i> .	

Definition	Source
N	
Natural draught The flow produced by the tendency of warmed gases to rise.	AS/VM G4
Natural hazard has the meaning given to it by section 71 of the Building Act 2004. Section 71(3) states: “(3) In this section and sections 72 to 74, natural hazard means any of the following: (a) erosion (including coastal erosion, bank erosion, and sheet erosion); (b) falling debris (including soil, rock, snow, and ice); (c) subsidence; (d) inundation (including flooding, overland flow, storm surge, tidal effects, and ponding); (e) slippage.”	BA04
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Net openable area is the area of windows or doors or other opening measured on the face dimensions of the openable building element concerned.	AS/VM G4
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Network utility operator means a person who— (a) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution or transmission by pipeline of natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, biofuel, or geothermal energy; or (b) operates or proposes to operate a network for the purpose of— (i) telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001; or (ii) radiocommunications as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989; or (c) is an electricity operator or electricity distributor as defined in section 2 of the Electricity Act 1992 for the purpose of line function services as defined in that section; or (d) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution of water for supply (including irrigation); or (e) undertakes or proposes to undertake a drainage or sewerage system	BA04
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Nogging See dwang	Simple House
Nominal pile width The least width of a pile in side view and is equal to the diameter in round piles.	AS/VM B1
Non-combustible Materials shall be classified as <i>non-combustible</i> or <i>combustible</i> when tested to: AS 1530 – Part 1.	AS/VM B1, C
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Non-loadbearing stud A stud in a <i>non-loadbearing wall</i> .	Simple House
Non-loadbearing wall A wall other than a <i>loadbearing wall</i> .	Simple House
Non-return valve A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a hot or cold water system.	AS/VM G12
Nosing The rounded projecting edge of a stair tread.	AS/VM D1, F4

Definition	Source
<p>Notice to fix has the meaning given to it by section 164(2) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p> <p>Section 164(2) states:</p> <p>“(2) A responsible authority must issue to the specified person concerned a notice (a notice to fix) requiring the person—</p> <p>(a) to remedy the contravention of, or to comply with, this Act or the regulations; or</p> <p>(b) to correct the warrant of fitness; or</p> <p>(c) to properly comply with the inspection, maintenance, or reporting procedures stated in the compliance schedule.”</p>	BA04
<p>Notional boundary The <i>boundary</i> which for <i>fire</i> safety purposes, is assumed to exist between two <i>buildings</i> on the same property under a single land title.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>A <i>notional boundary</i> may be located anywhere between the two <i>buildings</i> on the same property using the following rules:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The <i>notional boundary</i> is assumed to exist in the space between the <i>buildings</i> and is positioned so that one of the <i>buildings</i> would comply with the provisions for space separation having regard to the amount of its <i>unprotected area</i>. In practice, if one of the <i>buildings</i> is existing, the position of the <i>boundary</i> will be set by the space separation factors for that <i>building</i>. 2. The siting of the new <i>building</i>, or the second <i>building</i> if both are new, can then be checked to see that it also complies, using the <i>notional boundary</i> as the <i>relevant boundary</i> for the second <i>building</i>. (Once the <i>notional boundary</i> is set for the first <i>building</i> it becomes the <i>relevant boundary</i> for the second (new) <i>building</i> and does not move). 	
<p>NUO system means a system owned or controlled by a <i>network utility operator</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>NZBC New Zealand Building Code.</p>	AS/VM E2
O	
<p>Occupant load The greatest number of people likely to occupy a particular space within a <i>building</i>. It is determined by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) dividing the total floor area by the m² per person (occupant density) for the activity being undertaken, or b) for sleeping areas, counting the number of sleeping (or care) spaces, or c) for fixed seating areas, counting the number of seats. 	AS/VM C, F6, F7
<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>See Paragraphs 1.4.5 (for fixed seating) and 1.4.6 (for sleeping areas) of C/AS1–C/AS7 where appropriate</p>	
<p>Occupied space Any space within a <i>building</i> in which a <i>person</i> will be present from time to time during the <i>intended use</i> of the <i>building</i>.</p>	Code
<p>Opacity of smoke Ratio of incident light intensity to transmitted light intensity through smoke under specified conditions.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Open path That part of an <i>escape route</i> (including <i>dead ends</i>) within a <i>firecell</i> where occupants may be exposed to <i>fire</i> or smoke while making their escape.</p>	Code

Definition	Source
Amend 13 Feb 2014 Open space includes land on which there are, and will be, no <i>buildings</i> and which has no roof over any part of it other than overhanging eaves.	AS/VM C
Open vented storage water heater A <i>water heater</i> incorporating a <i>vent pipe</i> which is permanently open to the atmosphere.	AS/VM G12
Optical density of smoke Measure of the attenuation of a light beam passing through smoke expressed as the logarithm to the base 10 of the opacity of smoke.	AS/VM C
Other property—	BA04
(a) means any land or <i>buildings</i> , or part of any land or <i>buildings</i> , that are—	
(i) not held under the same <i>allotment</i> ; or	
(ii) not held under the same ownership; and	
(b) includes a road	
Outdoor air Air as typically comprising by volume:	Code
(i) oxygen 20.94%	
(ii) carbon dioxide 0.03%	
(iii) nitrogen and other inert gases 79.03%.	
Outfall That part of the disposal system receiving <i>surface water</i> or <i>foul water</i> from the drainage system. For <i>foul water</i> , the <i>outfall</i> may include a <i>sewer</i> or a septic tank. For <i>surface water</i> , the <i>outfall</i> may include a natural water course, kerb and channel, or soakage system.	Code
Over-pressure protection Devices preventing the pressure in piping or appliances from exceeding a predetermined value.	AS/VM G11
Owner , in relation to land and any <i>buildings</i> on the land,—	BA04
(a) means the <i>person</i> who—	
(i) is entitled to the rack rent from the land; or	
(ii) would be so entitled if the land were let to a tenant at a rack rent; and	
(b) includes—	
(i) the <i>owner</i> of the fee simple of the land; and	
(ii) any <i>person</i> who has agreed in writing, whether conditionally or unconditionally, to purchase the land or any leasehold estate or interest in the land or to take a lease of the land and who is bound by the agreement because the agreement is still in force.	
P	
Parallel flashing A roof <i>flashing</i> that runs along the roof slope, parallel to the roof <i>cladding</i> profile. Also known as a longitudinal <i>flashing</i> .	AS/VM E2
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Parapet A timber-framed wall that extends above the level of the roof <i>cladding</i> . Refer also Enclosed balustrade.	AS/VM E2
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Passive stack ventilator A system including a ventilation shaft which uses natural draught to ventilate spaces.	AS/VM G4
Penetration A pipe, cable or duct passing through an opening in a <i>fire separation</i> .	AS/VM C

Definition	Source
Penstocks are conduits to control the flow of water in water supply, hydroelectric power and sewerage systems. Penstocks are normally equipped with a gate system and surge tank.	DG
People with disabilities People whose ability to use <i>buildings</i> is affected by mental, physical, hearing or sight impairment.	Code
Performance criteria in relation to a <i>building</i> , means those qualitative or quantitative criteria that the <i>building</i> is required to satisfy in performing its <i>functional requirement</i> .	BA04
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Permanent opening An opening which cannot be closed, this implies that doors, windows etc are NOT permanent openings, although door undercuts are.	AS/VM G4
Person includes—	BA04
(a) the Crown; and	
(b) a corporation sole; and	
Amend 12 Oct 2011 (c) a body of persons (whether corporate or unincorporate)	
Person with a disability means a <i>person</i> who has an impairment or a combination of impairments that limits the extent to which the <i>person</i> can engage in the activities, pursuits, and processes of everyday life, including, without limitation, any of the following:	BA04
(a) a physical, sensory, neurological, or intellectual impairment:	
(b) a mental illness.	
Piping system An assembly of pipes, pipe fittings, gaskets, bolting and pipe supports.	AS/VM G14
Pitch line The line joining the leading edge or <i>nosings</i> (if any) of successive stair treads within a single flight of <i>stairs</i> .	AS/VM F4 (Sep 07)
Place of safety means either—	Code
a) a <i>safe place</i> ; or	
b) a place that is inside a <i>building</i> and meets the following requirements:	
i) the place is constructed with <i>fire separations</i> that have <i>fire</i> resistance sufficient to withstand <i>burnout</i> at the point of the <i>fire source</i> ; and	
ii) the place is in a <i>building</i> that is protected by an automatic fire sprinkler system that complies with NZS 4541 or NZS 4515 as appropriate to the <i>building's</i> use; and	
iii) the place is designed to accommodate the intended number of persons at a design occupant density of not less than 1.0 m ² per person; and	
iv) the place is provided with sufficient means of escape to enable the intended number of persons to escape to a <i>safe place</i> that is outside a <i>building</i> .	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	

Definition	Source
Plans and specifications—	BA04
(a) means the drawings, specifications, and other documents according to which a <i>building</i> is proposed to be <i>constructed</i> , <i>altered</i> , demolished, or removed; and	
(b) includes the proposed procedures for inspection during the <i>construction</i> , <i>alteration</i> , demolition, or removal of a <i>building</i> ; and	
(c) in the case of the <i>construction</i> or <i>alteration</i> of a <i>building</i> , also includes—	
(i) the <i>intended use</i> of the <i>building</i> ; and	
(ii) the <i>specified systems</i> that the applicant for <i>building consent</i> considers will be required to be included in a <i>compliance schedule</i> required under section 100; and	
(iii) the proposed procedures for inspection and routine maintenance for the purposes of the <i>compliance schedule</i> for those <i>specified systems</i> .	
Plate A timber member supported by a <i>foundation</i> or <i>studs</i> to support and distribute the load from floors, walls, <i>roofs</i> or ceilings. See bottom plate , top plate .	Simple House
Plumbing system Pipes, joints and fittings laid above ground and used for the conveyance of <i>foul water</i> to the <i>foul water drain</i> , and includes <i>vent pipes</i> .	Code
Post An isolated vertical member acting as a support.	Simple House
Potable (and potable water) Water that is suitable for human consumption.	AS/VM G12
Potential impact classification is related to the consequence (effects) of the <i>dam</i> failing, if it should release its stored contents. Consequences include loss of life, socio-economic, financial and environmental.	DG
Prescribed electrical work has the meaning given to it by section 2(1) of the Electricity Act 1992.	BA04, EA
Pre-travel activity time Time period after an alarm or <i>fire</i> cue is transmitted and before occupants first travel towards an exit.	AS/VM C
Primary element A <i>building element</i> providing the basic load bearing capacity to the structure, and which if affected by <i>fire</i> may initiate instability or premature structural collapse.	AS/VM B2, C
COMMENT: Suspended floors in multi-storey <i>buildings</i> are <i>primary elements</i> .	
Principal user A member of the primary group for which a <i>building</i> was constructed, and therefore explicitly excludes <i>persons</i> or groups of <i>persons</i> providing care or control of that <i>principal user</i> group.	Code
Privacy The situation of being withdrawn from view.	AS/VM G1
Private stairway A <i>stairway</i> used, or intended to be used, by the occupants of a single <i>household unit</i> .	AS/VM D1
Privy A private room containing a receptacle (other than a WC) or an excavation for excreted liquid or solid human waste, and with a means of disposal or containment of the waste.	AS/VM G1

Definition	Source
<p>Producer statements are formal statements supplied by or on behalf of</p> <p>(i) an applicant for a <i>building consent</i>, or</p> <p>(ii) by or on behalf of a <i>person</i> who has carried out <i>building work</i>.</p> <p>that can be accepted by a <i>building consent authority</i> as verification that certain work will be or has been carried out in accordance with nominated performance requirements of the <i>Building Code</i>.</p>	HB
<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>Although no longer expressly referred to in the <i>Building Act 2004</i>, these could be accepted and considered as part of the plans or specifications.</p>	
<p>Product certificate means a certificate issued under section 269 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> that a <i>building consent authority</i> must accept as establishing compliance with the <i>Building Code</i>.</p>	HB
<p>Product certification accreditation body means the <i>person</i> referred to in section 261(2) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Property includes land, <i>buildings</i>, and goods; but does not include incorporeal forms of <i>property</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Property rating The <i>fire resistance rating</i> to be applied to elements of <i>construction</i> that allows for protection of <i>other property</i>.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Proprietary fasteners <i>Proprietary fasteners</i> may be used where the fixing <i>capacity</i> of fixings are specifically identified in this [SH/AS1] <i>Acceptable Solution</i>.</p> <p>Manufacturers of a timber connector or fixing shall provide the following information on each package of fixings, or on a securely attached label:</p> <p>(a) the name, or registered trade name, or make and address of manufacturer</p> <p>(b) the materials used in manufacture including fasteners and corrosion protection</p> <p>(c) the load capacity of the timber connector or fixing in kN determined in accordance with the following equation:</p> $R = \varphi \times Q_k \times n \times k$ <p>Where:</p> <p>R = connector capacity in kN</p> <p>φ = capacity reduction factor from NZS 3603</p> <p>Q_k = characteristic value obtained by test in accordance with BRANZ Evaluation Method EM1 or AS/NZS 2699: Part 2 as appropriate</p> <p>n = number of tested elements making up the complete joint</p> <p>k = modification factors from NZS 3603 (Section 4) as appropriate to specific application.</p> <p>(d) fastener's requirements</p> <p>(e) details of <i>intended use</i></p> <p>(f) durability in accordance with Paragraph 2.5.4.</p>	Simple House
<p>Protected shaft A space, other than a <i>safe path</i>, enclosed by <i>fire separations</i> or <i>external walls</i> used to house <i>building services</i>, lifts, or conveyors which pass from one <i>firecell</i> to another.</p>	AS/VM C

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Definition	Source
Purlin A horizontal member laid to span across <i>rafters</i> or trusses, and to which the roof <i>cladding</i> is attached.	AS/VM E2
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Purlin Includes tile batten . A horizontal member laid to span across <i>rafters</i> or trusses and to which the <i>roof cladding</i> is attached.	Simple House
Purpose group The classification of spaces within a <i>building</i> according to the activity for which the spaces are used.	Code

R

Amend 11 Sep 2010 R A plain round reinforcing bar of the stated <i>diameter</i> in millimetres.	Simple House
R-value The common abbreviation for describing the values of both <i>thermal resistance</i> and <i>total thermal resistance</i> .	AS/VM E3, G5, H1
Radiocommunications has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989.	
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Rafter A <i>framing</i> timber, normally parallel to the slope of the roof, providing support for sarking, <i>purlins</i> or roof <i>cladding</i> .	AS/VM E2
Rafter A <i>framing</i> timber normally parallel to the slope of the <i>roof</i> and providing support for the <i>purlins</i> or <i>roof</i> covering, or ceiling <i>lining</i> .	Simple House
Railway line has the meaning ascribed to it by section 2 of the Transport Services Licensing Act 1989.	AS/VM C, RA

The definition of 'Railway line' in the Transport Services Licensing Act 1989 has been repealed by the Railways Act 2005. Section 4 of the Railways Act 2005 now contains the definition for "railway line".

Section 4 states

"railway line" —

- (a) means a single rail or set of rails, having a gauge of 550 mm or greater between them, laid for the purposes of transporting people or goods by rail; and
- (b) includes—
 - (i) sleepers, associated formation and ballast, tunnels, and bridges; and
 - (ii) in relation to a single rail or set of rails that are laid on a road for the purposes of 1 or more light rail vehicles,—
 - (A) any area between the rails; and
 - (B) the area that extends 500 mm outside the extremity of any light rail vehicle being used on that single rail or set of rails; and
 - (iii) a set of rails, having a gauge of less than 550 mm between them, that is designated as a railway line in regulations made under section 59(l); and
 - (iv) except as provided in subparagraph (ii), any area within 5 m of a single rail or within 5 m of a line drawn midway between a set of rails; but
- (c) excludes—
 - (i) a railway line that is part of a railway used as an amusement device as defined in section 21A(1) of the Machinery Act 1950;
 - (ii) a railway line excluded by regulations made under section 59(m);
 - (iii) a railway line that exclusively serves private cable cars".

Definition	Source
<p>Reasonably visible, in relation to a <i>specified feature</i>, and for the purposes of Clause F6, means that the <i>specified feature</i> is visible to a person who—</p> <p>(a) is 10 metres from it, or the greatest distance from it that it is possible to go in the open space surrounding it, whichever is the lesser; and</p> <p>(b) has sight that is not defective, or is corrected (for example, by an optical appliance).</p>	Code
<p>Reflectance The ratio of the flux reflected from a surface to the flux incident on it.</p>	AS/VM G7, G8
<p>Regional authority means—</p> <p>(a) a <i>regional council</i>; or</p> <p>(b) a <i>unitary authority</i></p>	BA04
<p>Regional council has the meaning given to it by section 5(1) of the Local Government Act 2002.</p>	BA04
<p>Registrar has the meaning given to it by section 282 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Regulations means regulations in force under the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Regulator A device which automatically regulates the pressure or volume of gas passing through it to a predetermined level.</p>	AS/VM G10, AS/VM G11
<p>Reinforcement Any form of reinforcing rod, bar or mesh that complies with the relevant requirements of NZS 3109.</p>	Simple House
<p>Relevant boundary Relevant <i>boundary</i> means the <i>boundary</i> of an <i>allotment</i> that is <i>other property</i> in relation to the <i>building</i> in question and from which is measured the separation between the <i>building</i> and that <i>other property</i>; and for the <i>external wall</i> of any <i>building</i>, the <i>relevant boundary</i> is the nearest of—</p> <p>(a) a <i>boundary</i> of a freehold <i>allotment</i>, except that if the <i>other property</i> is a <i>road</i>, <i>railway line</i>, or public <i>open space</i>, the <i>relevant boundary</i> is the <i>boundary</i> on the far side of that <i>other property</i>; or</p> <p>(b) a <i>boundary</i> of a cross-lease or a company lease or a licence, except that if the <i>other property</i> is <i>open space</i> to which the lessee or licensee of the <i>building</i> in question has an exclusive right of access and occupation or to which 2 or more occupiers of the <i>building</i> in question have rights of access and occupation, the <i>relevant boundary</i> is the <i>boundary</i> on the far side of that <i>other property</i>; or</p> <p>(c) a <i>boundary</i> shown on a unit plan (but excluding a <i>boundary</i> between a principal unit and its accessory unit), except that if the <i>other property</i> is open space and is common property, the <i>relevant boundary</i> is the <i>boundary</i> on the far side of that <i>other property</i>.</p>	AS/VM C

COMMENT:

1. Where an easement, such as a right of way, occurs within an *allotment*, the *relevant boundary* shall remain the same as if the easement did not exist.
2. *Boundaries* within a cross-lease or company lease or licence are shown on a survey plan. In some cases the *boundary* is the *external wall* or roof of a *building*.
3. The unit title *boundaries* of principal units, accessory units, and common property are shown in the unit plan. A *boundary* is frequently an internal or *external wall*, an upper floor, or the roof of a *building*.

Definition

Source

4. A wall along a *boundary* between two *allotments* is called a “party wall” when the *owners* of the *allotments* each have legal rights in respect of that wall registered by way of easements on one or both titles. An internal wall between cross-leases, company leases, or unit titles, or between one of them and common property, is not generally called a party wall but in that case also the lessees, unit title holders, or corporate body concerned each have legal rights in respect of that wall. Such a wall separates areas which are *other property* in relation to each other, but the wall itself is part of each property. The *fire protection* consequence of that legal concept is that such a wall can be regarded as a *fire separation* providing protection against horizontal *fire* spread in each direction. In other words, that wall may provide the appropriate *FRR* instead of each property having its own wall of that *FRR*.

Relief vent A *vent pipe* which is connected to a *discharge stack* below the lowest branch connection and which connects at its upper end to the *discharge stack vent* or terminates as an open vent.

AS/VM G13

Required safe egress time (RSET) Time required for escape. This is the calculated time period required for an individual occupant to travel from their location at the time of ignition to a *place of safety*.

AS/VM C

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Reservoir Body of water impounded by one or more *dams* or *dikes*, inclusive of its shores and banks and of any facility or installation necessary for its operation.

DG

Response Time Index (RTI) The measure of the reaction time to a *fire* phenomenon of the sensing element of a *fire safety system*.

Ribbon board Includes **soffit plate**. A horizontal *framing* timber secured to, or checked into, the edges of *studs* and supporting *eaves bearers*.

Simple House

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Ridge beam A single beam that supports *rafters* of a *skillion roof*.

Simple House

Risk group The classification of a building or firecells within a building according to the use to which it is intended to be put.

AS/VM C

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Risk group A, for the purposes of performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5, means *buildings*—

Code

(a) whose occupants are required to remain in the *building* until the main lighting system is restored; or

(b) whose *evacuation time* is longer than 90 minutes.

Risk group B, for the purposes of performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5, means *buildings*—

Code

(a) whose *evacuation time* is 30 minutes or longer but not longer than 90 minutes; or

(b) whose occupant load is more than 1 000.

Risk group C, for the purposes of performance F6.3.4, means *buildings* not in *risk group A* or *risk group B*.

Code

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Reservoir capacity Total or gross storage capacity of the *reservoir* at full supply level.

DG

Risk matrix A table that allows the calculation of a *risk score* by the allocation and summing of scores for a range of design and location factors applying to a specific *building* design.

AS/VM E2

	Definition	Source
	Risk score An aggregated numerical score for a proposed <i>building</i> as defined by E2/AS1. The <i>risk score</i> is determined by completion of the <i>risk matrix</i> .	AS/VM E2
	Road has the meaning ascribed to it by section 315 of the Local Government Act 1974 and includes a public place and also includes a motorway.	AS/VM C/LGA
	Rodding point A removable cap at ground level through which access may be made for cleaning and inspecting the drainage system.	AS/VM E1, G13
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Roof That part of a <i>building</i> having its upper surface exposed to the outside and at an angle of 60° or less to the horizontal.	AS/VM E2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Roof That part of the <i>building</i> having its upper surface exposed to the outside and at an angle of between 10° and 35° to the horizontal. See skillion roof .	Simple House
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Roof underlay An absorbent permeable building paper that absorbs or collects condensation or water in association with <i>roof cladding</i> performance.	AS/VM E2
	Roof underlay An absorbent, permeable paper that absorbs or collects condensation or water that may penetrate the <i>roof cladding</i> . The <i>roof underlay</i> shall have the properties in Table 23 of the <i>Acceptable Solution</i> E2/AS1 for Building Code Clause E2 External Moisture: (a) absorbency of 100 g/m ² or greater (b) vapour resistance 7 MN s/g or less (c) water resistance of 100 mm or greater (d) pH of extract of between 6.0 and 9.0 (e) shrinkage no more than 0.5% (f) mechanical edge tear and tensile strength to AS/NZS 4200.	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Room-sealed appliance An appliance designed so that air for combustion neither enters from, nor combustion products enter into, the room in which the appliance is located.	CD-G4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Running bonds , See bond	Simple House
S		
	Saddle flashing A <i>flashing</i> used to weatherproof the junction between a horizontal and vertical surface.	AS/VM E2
	Safe path That part of an <i>exitway</i> which is protected from the effects of <i>fire</i> by <i>fire separations</i> , <i>external walls</i> , or by distance when exposed to open air.	Code
	Safe place A place, outside of and in the vicinity of a single <i>building</i> unit, from which people may safely disperse after escaping the effects of a <i>fire</i> . It may be a place such as a street, <i>open space</i> , public space or an <i>adjacent building</i> unit.	AS/VM C
	COMMENT: The Fire Safety and Evacuation of Buildings Regulations 2006 use the term ' <i>place of safety</i> ' and allow the <i>place of safety</i> to be within the <i>building</i> provided that it is protected with a sprinkler system.	
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Safety colour (green, red or yellow) A colour of specified properties to which a safety meaning is attributed.	AS/VM F8

Definition	Source
Safety glass means a glass so treated or combined with other materials as to reduce the likelihood of injury to <i>persons</i> when it is cracked or broken.	AS/VM F2
Safety shut-off system An arrangement of valves and associated control systems which shuts off the supply of gas when required by a device which senses an unsafe condition.	AS/VM G10
Safety sign A particular type of sign which comprises a geometric form and a <i>safety colour</i> , together with a <i>safety symbol</i> or text (that is, words, letters, numbers or a combination of these) and gives a particular safety message.	AS/VM F8
Safety symbol means a graphic symbol used in a <i>safety sign</i> .	AS/VM F8
Sanitary appliance An appliance which is intended to be used for <i>sanitation</i> , but which is not a <i>sanitary fixture</i> . Included are machines for washing dishes and clothes.	Code
Sanitary fixture Any <i>fixture</i> which is intended to be used for <i>sanitation</i> .	Code
Sanitation The term used to describe the activities of washing and/or excretion carried out in a manner or condition such that the effect on health is minimised, with regard to dirt and infection.	Code
Scaffolding used in the course of the <i>construction</i> process, means any structure, framework, swinging stage, suspended <i>scaffolding</i> , or boatswain's chair, that is of a temporary nature and that is used or intended to be used for: the support or protection of workers engaged in, or in connection with <i>construction</i> work for the purpose of carrying out that work, or the support of materials used in connection with the work; and includes any plank, coupling, fastening, fitting, or device used in connection with the <i>construction</i> , erection, or use of <i>scaffolding</i> .	BA04
Scupper An opening in a <i>parapet</i> or <i>enclosed balustrade</i> to allow water to drain into a rainwater head.	AS/VM E2
Sealant A flexible neutral cure sealant for gap filling and weatherproofing that complies with: (a) Type F, Class 20 LM or 25 LM of ISO 11600, or (b) low modulus Type II Class A of Federal Specification TT-S-00230C.	Simple House
Secondary element A <i>building element</i> not providing load bearing capacity to the structure and if affected by <i>fire</i> , instability or collapse of the <i>building</i> structure will not occur.	AS/VM B2, C
Secondary flow path The path over which <i>surface water</i> will follow if the drainage system becomes overloaded or inoperative.	AS/VM E1
Secondary private stairway A <i>private stairway</i> other than a <i>main</i> or <i>minor private stairway</i> , intended to provide access to another floor containing only bedrooms, bathroom or similar accommodation.	AS/VM D1
Separating element Barrier that exhibits fire <i>integrity</i> , <i>structural adequacy</i> , thermal <i>insulation</i> , or a combination of these for a period of time under specified conditions (in a fire resistance test).	
Service ramp means a ramp that is used, or intended to be used, infrequently by service personnel to gain access to spaces for the purposes of maintenance and the movement of goods.	AS/VM D1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
Service stairway means a <i>stairway</i> that is used, or intended to be used, infrequently by service personnel to gain access to spaces for the purposes of maintenance and the movement of goods.	AS/VM D1
Sewer A <i>drain</i> that is under the control of, or maintained by, a <i>network utility operator</i> .	Code
Sill support bar A bar or mechanism complying with EM6, E2/VM1 tests, and Clause B2 of the <i>Building Code</i> , and used to support the weight of aluminium window and door joinery that is installed over drained cavities.	AS/VM E2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	
Simple house A house that is described in Section 1 of this [SH/AS1] <i>Acceptable Solution</i> .	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010	
Sitework means work on a <i>building</i> site, including earthworks, preparatory to, or associated with the <i>construction, alteration, demolition, or removal</i> of a <i>building</i> .	BA04
Skillion roof A pitched <i>roof</i> where the ceiling <i>lining</i> is parallel and close to the <i>roof cladding</i> . The <i>roof</i> may be mono-pitch or may consist of more than one <i>roof plane</i> . These <i>roofs</i> may have <i>rafters</i> exposed below the ceiling.	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010	
Smokecell A space within a <i>building</i> which is enclosed by an envelope of <i>smoke separations, or external walls, roofs, and floors</i> .	AS/VM C
Smoke control door A <i>doorset</i> that complies with Appendix C, C6.1.2 of C/AS1–C/AS6 .	AS/VM C
Smoke lobby That portion of an <i>escape route</i> within a <i>firecell</i> that precedes a <i>safe path</i> or an <i>escape route</i> through an adjoining <i>building</i> which is protected from the effects of smoke by <i>smoke separations</i> .	AS/VM C
Smoke production rate Amount of smoke produced per unit time in a <i>fire</i> or <i>fire test</i> .	AS/VM C
Smoke separation Any <i>building element</i> able to prevent the passage of smoke between two spaces. <i>Smoke separations</i> shall: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Be a smoke barrier complying with BS EN 12101 Part 1, or b) Consist of rigid <i>building elements</i> capable of resisting without collapse: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i) a pressure of 0.1 kPa applied from either side, and ii) self weight plus the intended vertically applied live loads, and c) Form an imperforate barrier to the spread of smoke, and d) Be of <i>non-combustible construction</i>, or achieve a <i>FRR</i> of 10/10/–, except that <i>non-fire resisting glazing</i> may be used if it is toughened or laminated <i>safety glass</i>. 	AS/VM C

COMMENT:

The pressure requirement is to ensure rigidity and is not a smoke leakage requirement.

Walls and floors, whether *constructed* of sheet linings fixed to studs or joists, or of concrete, glazing, metal or fired clay, need only be inspected by someone experienced in *building construction* to judge whether the *construction* is tight enough to inhibit the passage of smoke.

Item d) is intended to ensure that the *smoke separation* will continue to perform as an effective barrier when exposed to *fire* or smoke for a short period during *fire* development.

Amend 13
Feb 2014

	Definition	Source
Amend 13 Feb 2014	There is no requirement for <i>smoke control doors</i> or other closures in <i>smoke separations</i> to meet the provisions of item d)	
	Socket outlet An accessory fixed to a wall or ceiling and designed to accept a plug that extends the electrical supply to an appliance by means of a flexible cable.	AS/VM G2
	Soffit bearer See eaves bearer .	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Soffit plate See ribbon board .	Simple House
	Soft edge A compatible soft edging seamed onto <i>flashings</i> to provide closure to profiled <i>cladding</i> .	AS/VM E2
	Soil fixture A <i>sanitary fixture</i> constructed to receive solid and/or liquid excreted human waste. It includes bedpan disposal units, slop sinks, urinals, water closet pans, and water-flushed sanitary towel disposal units.	AS/VM G1, G13
	Sound transmission class (STC) A single number rating derived from measured values of transmission loss in accordance with classification ASTM E 413, Determination of Sound Transmission Class. It provides an estimate of the performance of a partition in certain common sound insulation situations.	Code
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Spacing or spaced The distance at which members are spaced, measured centre to centre.	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Spans See member span and support span .	Simple House
	Specific design Design and detailing for compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> , of a proposed part or parts of a <i>building</i> which are not shown in this Acceptable Solution.	AS/VM E2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Specific design Design and detailing of a proposed <i>building</i> or parts of a <i>building</i> , demonstrating compliance with the Building Code, that shall be provided to the <i>building consent authority</i> for assessment and approval as part of the <i>building consent</i> process. <i>Buildings</i> , or parts of <i>buildings</i> , requiring <i>specific design</i> are beyond the scope of the <i>Simple House Acceptable Solution</i> .	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Specific extinction area of smoke Extinction area of smoke produced by a test specimen in a given time period, divided by the mass lost from the test specimen in the same time period.	AS/VM C
Amend 13 Feb 2014	Specified features , for the purposes of Clause F6, means the following: (a) <i>building elements</i> that may act as obstructions: (b) safety features required under clauses of the <i>Building Code</i> other than Clause F6 (for example, <i>handrails</i> required under Clause D1): (c) changes in direction: (d) stairs and ramps: (e) escape doors: (f) entries to a <i>safe place</i> .	Code
Amend 11 Sep 2010		

Definition	Source
<p>Specified intended life has the meaning given to it by section 113(3) of the Building Act 2004.</p> <p>Section 113(3) states:</p> <p>“(3) In subsection (2), specified intended life, in relation to a building, means the period of time, as stated in an application for a building consent or in the consent itself, for which the building is proposed to be used for its intended use.”</p>	BA04
<p>Specified system—</p> <p>(a) means a system or feature that—</p> <p>(i) is contained in a <i>building</i>; and</p> <p>(ii) contributes to the proper functioning of the <i>building</i> (for example, an automatic sprinkler system);</p> <p>And</p> <p>(iii) is declared by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, to be a <i>specified system</i> for the purposes of this Act; and</p> <p>(b) includes a cable car.</p>	BA04
<p>Spread of flame index (SFI) That index number for spread of flame which is determined according to the <i>standard test</i> method for measuring the properties of lining materials.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Spillway Weir, channel, conduit, tunnel, gate or other structure designed to permit discharges from the reservoir.</p>	DG
<p>Stability In the context of <i>fire</i> protection is the support provided to a <i>building element</i> having a <i>FRR</i>, intended to avoid premature failure due to structural collapse as a result of applied load, dead and live loads or as a result of any additional loads caused by <i>fire</i>.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Stairway A series of steps or stairs with or without landings, including all necessary <i>handrails</i> and giving access between two different levels.</p>	AS/VM C, D1
<p>Stainless steel flashings Stainless steel <i>flashings</i> shall be:</p> <p>(a) minimum thickness of 0.45 mm, and</p> <p>(b) Type 304 or 316 stainless steel in accordance with Table 1 of ISO/TS 15510.</p>	Simple House
<p>Stanchion A connecting device, fixed into the structure of a <i>building</i>, that provides support for <i>handrails</i>, aials and similar structures.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Standards means specifications for <i>building</i> materials, methods, processes or practices that provide a basis for determining consistent and acceptable minimum levels of quality, performance, safety and reliability.</p>	HB

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend 11
Sep 2010

COMMENT:

Standards are developed by organisations that are recognised by the Government. In New Zealand, standards are developed by a trading arm of the Standards Council, a crown entity operating under the Standards Act 1988. In Australia, standards are developed by Standards Australia, which is recognised through a memorandum of understanding with the Commonwealth Government.

Definition	Source
<p>Standard test A test method which is recognised as being appropriate for the <i>fire</i> protection properties being assessed.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>COMMENT: A list of <i>standard test</i> methods is given in Appendix C of C/AS1–C/AS6.</p>	
<p>Standard year For the purposes of determining natural lighting, the hours between 8 am and 5 pm each day with an allowance being made for daylight saving.</p>	Code
<p>Statutory authority means an authority or organisation that has the statutory power to classify or register land or <i>buildings</i> for any purpose.</p>	BA04
<p>Stopend A turn-up at the upper edge of profiled metal <i>cladding</i>, or at the end of gutters and some types of <i>flashings</i>.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>COMMENT: A <i>stopend</i> assists the control of moisture by ensuring any moisture reaching the edge of the roofing is deflected from further entry.</p>	
<p>Storage water heater A <i>water tank</i> with an integral <i>water heater</i> for the storage of hot water.</p>	AS/VM G12
<p>Storey That portion of a <i>building</i> included between the upper surface of any floor and the upper surface of the floor immediately above, except the top <i>storey</i> shall be that portion of a <i>building</i> included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Strength reduction factor The factor by which the ultimate strength is multiplied to obtain the design strength.</p>	AS/VM B1
<p>COMMENT: NZS 4203: 1992 uses the terms ideal strength in place of ultimate strength, and dependable strength in place of design strength.</p>	
<p>Stretcher bonds, See bond</p>	Simple House
<p>Structural adequacy In the context of the <i>standard test</i> for <i>fire</i> resistance, is the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen has continued to carry its applied load within defined deflection limits.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Structural fire endurance rating (S) The <i>fire resistance rating (FRR)</i> intended to prevent <i>fire</i> spread or structural collapse for the complete burnout of the <i>firecell</i>.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Stucco A wall <i>cladding system</i> formed from reinforced solid plaster over a rigid or non-rigid backing.</p>	AS/VM E2
<p>Stud A vertical <i>framing</i> timber.</p>	AS/VM E2

Amend 13
Feb 2014Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 13
Feb 2014

Definition	Source
<p>Suite A <i>firecell</i> providing residential accommodation for the exclusive use of one <i>person</i> or of several people known to one another. It comprises one or more rooms for sleeping and may include spaces used for associated domestic activities such as hygiene and cooking.</p>	AS/VM C, F7
<p>COMMENT:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Bed numbers are limited to 6 in <i>risk group</i> SI or 12 in <i>risk group</i> SM in accordance with C/AS2 and C/AS3. Examples may be found in hotels, motels and residential care facilities, such as old people's homes or in hospices providing temporary family accommodation. 2. It is assumed that the social cohesion of the occupants by virtue of the personal relationship (as family members, friends or associates) would ensure that any individual, becoming aware of <i>fire</i>, would naturally assist others within the <i>firecell</i> to escape. The term <i>suite</i> does not apply to a group of bedrooms where each room is available to different "key-holders". In some cases a <i>suite</i> may be a single bedroom. 	
<p>Sump A chamber which is installed in the <i>drain</i> and incorporates features to intercept and retain silt, gravel and other debris.</p>	AS/VM E1
<p>Supervise, in relation to <i>building work</i>, means provide control or direction and oversight of the <i>building work</i> to an extent that is sufficient to ensure that the <i>building work</i>—</p> <p>(a) is performed competently; and</p> <p>(b) complies with the <i>building consent</i> under which it is carried out.</p>	BA04
<p>Support span A clear distance along a member between supports, measured in plan (horizontally).</p>	Simple House
<p>Surface finish The combination of a surface coating and substrate material on surfaces of <i>building elements</i> exposed to view. It can be an applied decorative coating or the uncoated <i>building element</i> itself. For interior surfaces the requirements are evaluated in terms of a <i>Group Number</i>. For exterior surfaces the requirements are evaluated in terms of rate of heat release as determined by Appendix C, Paragraph C6.1 of Acceptable Solutions C/AS6–C/AS7.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Surface spread of flame Flame spread away from the source of ignition across the surface of a liquid or a solid.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Surface water All naturally occurring water, other than sub-surface water, which results from rainfall on the site or water flowing onto the site, including that flowing from a <i>drain</i>, stream, river, lake or sea.</p>	Code
<p>T</p>	
<p>Tailing dam <i>Dam</i> constructed to retain tailings or other waste materials from mining or industrial operations.</p>	DG
<p>Tailpipe A device placed at the low point of a gas piping system to collect condensate, and from which the condensate may be removed.</p>	AS/VM G10

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Definition	Source
<p>Territorial authority (TA) means a city council or district council named in Part 2 of Schedule 2 of the Local Government Act 2002; and—</p> <p>(a) in relation to land within the district of a <i>territorial authority</i>, or a <i>building</i> on or proposed to be built on any such land, means that <i>territorial authority</i>; and</p> <p>(b) in relation to any part of a coastal marine area (within the meaning of the Resource Management Act 1991) that is not within the district of a <i>territorial authority</i>, or a <i>building</i> on or proposed to be built on any such part, means the <i>territorial authority</i> whose district is adjacent to that part.</p>	BA04
<p>Territorial authority City or district council (as named in Schedule 2, Part 2 of the Local Government Act 2002) responsible for community wellbeing and development, environmental health and safety (including building control, civil defence, and environmental health matters), infrastructure (roading and transport, sewerage, water/stormwater), recreation and culture, and resource management including land use planning and development control.</p>	Simple House
<p>Theatre A place of assembly intended for the production and viewing of performing arts, and consisting of an auditorium and stage with provision for raising and suspending stage scenery above and clear of the working area.</p>	AS/VM C, F4 (Sep 07)
<p>Thermal resistance The resistance to heat flow of a given component of a <i>building element</i>. It is equal to the air temperature difference (°C) needed to produce unit heat flux (W/m²) through unit area (m²) under steady conditions. The units are °Cm²/W.</p>	Code
<p>Threshold A sill to an external door, or the floor under an internal door.</p>	AS/VM D1
<p>Tile batten See purlin.</p>	Simple House
<p>Top plate A plate placed over the top end of <i>studs</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p>Total thermal resistance The overall air-to-air <i>thermal resistance</i> across all components of a <i>building element</i> such as a wall, roof or floor. (This includes the surface resistances which may vary with environmental changes eg, temperature and humidity, but for most purposes can be regarded as having standard values as given in NZS 4214.)</p>	AS/VM E3, G5
<p>Total wall area, in relation to a <i>building</i>, means the sum (expressed in square metres) of the following:</p> <p>(a) the <i>wall area</i> of the <i>building</i>; and</p> <p>(b) the area (expressed in square metres) of all vertical glazing in <i>external walls</i> of the <i>building</i>.</p>	Code Simple House
<p>Town gas A manufactured gas.</p>	AS/VM G11
<p>Toxic environment An environment that contains <i>contaminants</i> that can contaminate the water supply in concentrations greater than those included in the New Zealand Drinking Water Standard 1995.</p>	AS/VM G12
<p>Trade means any trade, business, industry, profession, occupation, activity of commerce, or undertaking relating to—</p> <p>(a) the supply or acquisition of goods or services; or</p> <p>(b) the acquisition of <i>household units</i> or any interest in land.</p>	BA04

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
Transverse flashing A roof <i>flashing</i> that runs across the roof slope, at right angles to the roof <i>cladding</i> profile.	AS/VM E2
Trap A chamber which is installed in the <i>drain</i> and incorporates features to intercept and retain floatable debris.	AS/VM E1
Trapezoidal A type of profiled metal <i>cladding</i> with symmetrical or asymmetrical crests, with troughs between the crests.	AS/VM E2
Travel distance Distance that is necessary for a person to travel from any point within a built environment to the nearest exit, taking into account the layout of walls, partitions and fittings.	AS/VM C (C/VM2)
Travel distance The length of the <i>escape route</i> as a whole or the individual lengths of its parts, namely: a) <i>open paths</i> and b) <i>safe paths</i> .	AS/VM C (C/AS1-C/AS6)
Trickle ventilator A controllable ventilation opening through the external envelope to the outside to provide background ventilation.	AS/VM G4
Trimmer A member supporting the wall <i>framing</i> beneath, or over an opening in a <i>non-loadbearing wall</i> and carrying wind loads to the <i>trimmer studs</i> .	Simple House
Trimmer stud A <i>stud</i> located on the side of an opening.	Simple House
Trough profile A type of profiled metal <i>cladding</i> comprising vertical ribs with flat, or lightly profiled pans between the ribs. Also known as ribbed, secret fixed or tray profile.	AS/VM E2
U	
Underlay The material used behind a <i>roof</i> or <i>wall cladding</i> . Refer Wall underlay and Roof underlay .	AS/VM E2
Unisex facilities Facilities available for use by either sex.	AS/VM G1
COMMENT: <i>Unisex facilities</i> may also be described as both gender facilities.	
Unitary authority has the meaning given to it by section 5(1) of the Local Government Act 2002. Section 5(1) states: “ unitary authority ” means a territorial authority that has the responsibilities, duties, and powers of a regional council conferred on it under— (a) the provisions of any Act; or (b) an Order in Council giving effect to a reorganisation scheme”	BA04/LGA
Universal access Where elements and spaces are accessible to and usable by people of all ages and abilities to the greatest extent possible.	Simple House

Definition	Source
<p>Unprotected area In relation to an <i>external wall</i> of a <i>building</i>, this means:</p> <p>a) Any part of the <i>external wall</i> which is not <i>fire</i> rated or has less than the required <i>FRR</i>, and</p> <p>b) Any part of the <i>external wall</i> which has combustible material more than 1.0 mm thick attached or applied to its external face, whether for cladding or any other purpose.</p> <p>COMMENT: <i>Unprotected area</i> includes non-<i>fire</i> rated windows, doors, or other openings, and non-<i>fire</i> rated <i>external wall construction</i>.</p>	Code
<p>Amend 13 Feb 2014</p>	
<p>uPVC flashings uPVC <i>flashings</i> shall be a minimum of 0.75 mm thick and:</p> <p>(a) comply with the requirements of the following Clauses of AS/NZS 4256: Part 2:</p> <p>ii) Clause 9.2 Impact resistance</p> <p>iii) Clause 9.3 Tensile strength</p> <p>iv) Clause 9.4 Colourfastness and impact resistance following ultraviolet light exposure.</p> <p>(b) where exposed to the weather, shall also comply with Section 8 of AS/NZS 4256: Part 2.</p> <p>(c) have a finish colour with a reflectance of 40% or more, when measured in accordance with ASTM C1549 or ASTM E903.</p>	Simple House
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p>	
<p>V</p>	
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p> <p>Valley board A board laid to support a <i>valley gutter</i>.</p> <p>Valley gutter A gutter running down the valley formed by the intersection of two pitched roof surfaces.</p> <p>Valve vented storage water heater (unvented storage water heater) A <i>storage water heater</i> in which the required venting to the atmosphere is controlled by a valve.</p> <p>Vapour barrier Sheet material or coating having a low water-vapour transmission, and used to minimise water-vapour penetration in <i>buildings</i>. (<i>Vapour barriers</i> are sometimes referred to as <i>damp-proof membranes</i>.)</p> <p>Vent line A pipe or tube which conveys gas to a safe place outside the <i>building</i> from a gas pressure <i>regulator</i> relief valve.</p> <p>Vent pipe A pipe for the purpose of protecting <i>water seals</i> that at its upper end is either open to the atmosphere or fitted with an <i>air admittance</i> valve and that at its lower end is connected to a <i>discharge pipe</i>.</p> <p>Verification Method means a method by which compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> may be verified.</p>	Simple House AS/VM E2 AS/VM G12 AS/VM B2 AS/VM G10 AS/VM G13 BA04
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p>	
<p>Visibility Maximum distance at which an object of defined size, brightness and contrast can be seen and recognised.</p>	AS/VM C
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p>	
<p>VSG Visual stress graded, refers to verified timber that is initially sorted visually in accordance with NZS 3603. See also MSG.</p>	Simple House

W

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Wall refer **External wall**.

AS/VM E2

Wall area, in relation to a *building*, means the area (expressed in square metres) of internally-exposed *external walls*, including any door openings, of the *building*.

Code

Wall bracing element A section of wall that performs a *bracing* function.

Simple House

Wall underlay An absorbent synthetic wrap used as part of the wall *cladding system* to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which may occasionally penetrate the wall *cladding* is directed back to the exterior of the *building*.

Simple House

The *wall underlay* shall have the properties in Table 23 of the *Acceptable Solution E2/AS1* for Building Code Clause E2 External Moisture:

(a) absorbency – no requirement

(b) vapour resistance 7 MN s/g or less

(c) water resistance of 20 mm or greater

(d) pH of extract of between 6.0 and 9.0

(e) shrinkage no more than 0.5%

(f) mechanical edge tear and tensile strength to AS/NZS 4200.

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Wall underlay A building paper, synthetic material or rigid sheathing used as part of the *wall cladding system* to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which occasionally penetrates the *wall cladding* is directed back to the exterior of the *building*.

AS/VM E2

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Waste pipe A *discharge pipe* that conveys the discharge from *waste water fixtures* to a *gully trap*.

AS/VM G13

Waste water fixture A *sanitary fixture* or *sanitary appliance* used to receive wastes, and which is not a *soil fixture*.

AS/VM G13

Water heater A device for heating water.

AS/VM B2, G12

Water main A water supply pipe that is under the control, or maintained by a *network utility operator*.

Code

Waterproof and waterproofing The complete and total resistance of a *building element* to the ingress of any moisture.

AS/VM E2

Water seal The depth of water that can be retained in a *water trap*.

AS/VM G2, G13

Water supply system Pipes, fittings and tanks used or intended to be used for the storage and reticulation of water from a *water main* or other water source to *sanitary fixtures*, *sanitary appliances* and fittings within a *building*.

Code

Water tank (vessel) A covered fixed container for storing hot or cold water.

AS/VM G12

Water trap A fitting designed to retain a depth of water that prevents foul air and gases escaping from the *plumbing system* or *foul water drainage system* and entering a *building*.

AS/VM G2, G13

Weathertightness and weathertight Terms used to describe the resistance of a *building* to the weather. *Weathertightness* is a state where water is prevented from entering and accumulating behind the *cladding* in amounts that can cause undue dampness or damage to the *building elements*.

AS/VM E2

COMMENT:

The term *weathertightness* is not necessarily the same as *waterproof*. However, a *weathertight building*, even under severe weather conditions, is expected to limit moisture ingress to inconsequential amounts, insufficient to cause undue dampness inside *buildings* and damage to *building elements*. Moisture that may occasionally enter is able to harmlessly escape or evaporate.

Weathertightness and weathertight Terms used to describe the resistance of a *building* to the weather.

Simple House

Wet area An area within a *building* supplied with water from a water supply system including bathrooms and showers, laundries, sanitary compartments and kitchen areas.

Simple House

Wetwall The exterior *cladding* on a wall with a *drained cavity*.

AS/VM E2

Wharenui A communal meeting house having a large open floor area used for both assembly and sleeping in the traditional Maori manner.

AS/VM C, H1

Wind zone Categorisation of wind force experienced on a particular site as determined in NZS 3604, Section 5.

AS/VM E2

COMMENT:

Maximum ultimate limit state speeds are:

Low *wind zone* = wind speed of 32 m/s

Medium *wind zone* = wind speed of 37 m/s

High *wind zone* = wind speed of 44 m/s

Very high *wind zone* = wind speed of 50 m/s

Extra high *wind zone* = wind speed of 55 m/s.

Specific design is required for wind speeds greater than 55 m/s.

Wire dog Galvanised or stainless steel wire, D or Z shaped nail, spiked at each end. Used for fixing timber together to resist uplift

Simple House

Working day means any day except—

BA04

(a) Saturday, Sunday, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, the Sovereign's Birthday, Labour Day, and Waitangi Day; and

(b) the day observed in the appropriate area as the anniversary of the province of which the area forms a part; and

(c) a day in the period beginning on 20 December in any year and ending with the close of 10 January in the following year.

Yield Mass of a combustion product generated during combustion divided by the mass loss of the test specimen.

AS/VM C

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Amend 13
Feb 2014

Index

(Revised by Amendment 13)

This is a complete index for the New Zealand Building Code, Acceptable Solutions and Verification Methods

A

Access

see **Access Routes**, and **Mechanical Installations for Access**

Access chambers

see Maintenance access to drains

Access points

see Maintenance access to drains

Access to a facility

food and work areas..... **G1/AS1** 3.2, Figure 10

lobbies..... **G1/AS1** 6.3.1

unisex facilities..... **G1/AS1** 1.1.5 c)

Access Routes..... **D1/AS1** 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 1.4.1, 1.5.1, 1.5.3 a),
1.5.4, 1.5.5, 1.6.1, 1.7.1, 1.8.1,
2.0, 5.1.3, Figure 27

see also Accessible routes, Activity space, Doors, Escape routes, Handrails, Height clearances, Level access routes, Mechanical Installations for Access, a Person with a disability, Ramps, Stairs, Obstructions, Vehicles, Wheelchairs

access to buildings..... **NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (a) (b), D1.3.3 (a) (b)**

access within buildings..... **NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (c), D1.3.5**

corridors..... **NZBC/D1.3.1 (c)**, F6.3.1

level access routes..... **D1/AS1** 2.0

protection from falling..... **D1/AS1** 2.3

slip resistance..... **D1/AS1** 2.1, Table 2

width..... **D1/AS1** 2.2

location..... **D1/AS1** 1.1

principal entrance..... **D1/AS1** 1.1

service and maintenance personnel..... **D1/AS1** 11.0.3

Access to facilities..... **NZBC/D1.3.3 (c)**, G1.3.5; **G3/AS1** Figure 1

Accessible accommodation units..... **D1/AS1** 9.0, 9.1, 9.1.1, 9.2.1, Table 9

see also a Person with a disability

bedrooms..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 c)

dining areas..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 c)

facilities..... **D1/AS1** 9.2

kitchens..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 b) ; **G3/AS1** 1.5.2, Figure 1

laundry..... **G2/AS1** 1.2, Figure 2

sitting areas..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 c)

toilets and baths..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 a)

Accessible routes..... **NZBC/D1.3.3, D1.3.4; D1/AS1** 1.1.1 to 1.1.3, 1.5.5 b), 2.1.1,
2.2.1, 7.0.1, 7.0.6, 11.0.1, Figure 27

access to performance areas..... **D1/AS1** 8.2

Accessible units..... **D1/AS1** 1.1.3

Activity space..... **NZBC/D1.3.2 (a), D1.3.4 (b), G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b), G5.3.3**

Aged, homes for

see Old people's homes

Air

see also **Ventilation**

airflow control..... **NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1** 3.0

purity..... **G4/VM1** 2.0

Air-handling systems..... **G4/AS1** 1.5.1 b)

- Airborne and Impact Sound** **G6**
 impact insulation class (IIC) **NZBC/G6.3.2**
 noise transmission between abutting occupancies **NZBC/G6.1, G6.2**
 sound insulation tests **G6/VM1 2.0**
 sound transmission class (STC) **NZBC/G6.3.1; G6/VM1 1.0**
- Alerting the Fire Service **F7/AS1 1.2.2, 1.2.7, 2.1.2 a), 2.2**
- Alterations and changes of use **C/AS1 1.3, C/AS2 1.3, C/AS3 1.3, C/AS4 1.3, C/AS5 1.3, C/AS6 1.3**
- Alternative solutions
 accessible routes **D1/AS1 11.0**
 bedding and backfilling drains **E1/AS1 3.9.8**
 laundry tubs **G2/AS1 1.0.3**
 open vented storage water heaters **G12/AS1 6.9.1**
 solid waste storage **G15/AS1 3.1**
 storage water heaters
 seismic restraint **G12/AS1 6.11.4**
 thermal resistance **E3/AS1 1.1.5 (Comment)**
 unvented (valve vented) storage water heaters **G12/AS1 6.10.1, Figure 14**
 watertightness testing **G12/AS1 7.5**
- Ancillary Buildings** **NZBC/A1 8.0, D1.2.1, D1.3.2 (h), D1.3.3, G1.3.5, G8.2, G12.3.0**
- Apartments
 see **Housing**, multi-unit dwellings
- Appliances
 see Sanitary appliances
- Artificial Light** **G8; NZBC/H1.2 (c), H1.3.5; D1/AS1 1.5.4 (Comment), 1.8, 4.6;**
 adequate lighting **NZBC/G8.2**
 energy consumption **H1/AS1 6.0**
 minimum illuminance **NZBC/G8.3; D1/AS1 4.6.1, Table 8, G8/AS1 1.0.1, Table 1**
 wattage required **D1/AS1 4.6.1, Table 8; G8/AS1 1.0.1, Table 1**
- Asbestos
 see **Hazardous Building Materials**
- Assembly care buildings
 see Communal non-residential buildings
- Assembly service buildings
 see Communal non-residential buildings
- Automatic extinguishers **G11/AS1 6.0**

B

- Backflow prevention
see Protection of water supplies
- Banks..... **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)**
see also Commercial buildings
- Barges **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.5, 8.3.9, 9.6.8.2, 9.6.9.4, Figures 36, 92 and 97
see also Gutters, barge and fascias
- Barriers..... **NZBC/F4.3.1, F4.3.4, F4.3.5, F5.3.2, F5.3.4; D1/AS1** 1.7;
F4/AS1 1.0; **F5/AS1** 1.0
see also **Access Routes, Handrails, Safety from Falling,**
Timber barriers
- accessible route **D1/AS1** 2.3.1
- construction **F4/AS1** 1.2, Figures 1-4
- construction site..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.6
- fences..... **F5/AS1** 1.1, 1.1.2
- around water hazards **F5/AS1** 1.2
- for specific hazards **F5/AS1** 1.0.2
- heights..... **F4/AS1** 1.1, Table 1
- hoardings..... **F5/AS1** 1.1, 1.1.3, 1.1.5
- viewing windows **F5/AS1** 1.1.4
- parapet and rail barriers..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.3, Figure 5
- safety enclosures for ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22
- scaffolding..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.6
- stair barriers **F4/AS1** Figure 4
- toeboards **F5/AS1** 1.4
- types of barriers **F5/AS1** 1.0.3
- Basins..... **G1/AS1** 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1; **G13/AS1** 3.3.2, 5.5.2, Table 2
- Baths **G1/AS1** Table 2; **G13/AS1** Table 2
- Bedrooms
see Habitable spaces
- Bidets **G1/AS1** 2.4; **G13/AS1** 5.5.2, Table 2
- Boarding Houses
see Communal residential buildings
- Boundary
see Notional boundary, Relevant boundaries
- Bridges
see Ancillary buildings
- Building construction
- non-solid construction **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, **H1/AS1** 2.1.3, 2.1.4
- solid construction..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, **H1/AS1** 2.1.3, 2.1.4
- thermal envelope **H1/VM1** 1.0, 1.1.2, **H1/AS1** 2.0, 2.1.3, 2.1.4
- thermal resistance (R-value)..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.4.1,
H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.3.1, 2.3.2
- Building elements **NZBC/B1.2, B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.3, B2.3, E2.3.2, E2.3.3,**
E2.3.4, E2.3.5, E2.3.6, E3.2, E3.3.5, F3.3 (f),
G3.3.2 (b) (c), G6.2, G9.3.1 (a) (e); B1/VM4 1.0.1;
C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.2.1, 5.6.1
- see also Floors, Ceilings, Roofs
- elements in contact with the ground..... **NZBC/E2.3.3**
- requiring noise control..... **G6/AS1** 1.0.2, Figure 1
- Building performance index
see Energy efficiency provisions
- Building site..... **E1/VM1** 3.2.2, 4.0.1, 4.1.10, **E1/AS1** 1.0.1
- evaluation **E1/VM1** 1.0.3

- Buildings
- building elements **B1/VM4** 2.0.3
 - building separation **NZBC/B1.3.3 (o)**
 - carports and similar structures **C/AS1** 5.5
 - commercial **H1/VM1** 1.0, 1.0.2, **H1/AS1** 1.0.1, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 6.1.1
 - communal non-residential **H1/VM1** 1.0, **H1/AS1** 1.0.1, 1.0.4, 6.1.1
 - communal residential **H1/VM1** 1.0, **H1/AS1** 1.0.1
 - earth buildings **B1/VM1** 8.0, **B1/AS1** 4.0, **E2/AS2** 1.0
 - education see Control of internal fire and smoke spread
 - housing **H1/VM1** 1.0, 1.1, **H1/AS1** 1.0, 2.0
 - detached dwellings **H1/VM1** 1.1.3, 1.2.1
 - group dwellings **H1/VM1** 1.1.3
 - multi-unit dwellings **H1/VM1** 1.1.3, 1.2.1, **H1/AS1** 2.1.2
 - wharenui **H1/VM1** 1.1.3
 - industrial **H1/VM1** 1.0.1, 1.0.2, **H1/AS1** 1.0.2, 1.0.3
 - intended life
 - see **Durability**
 - intended use
 - see Intended use
 - large buildings **H1/VM1** 1.0.1, 1.3, **H1/AS1** 1.0.2, 2.2.1, 4.0.1
 - masonry buildings **B1/AS1** 2.0, **B1/AS3** 1.1.1
 - membrane structures see Control of internal fire and smoke spread
 - minimum floor level **E1/AS1** 2.0, Figures 1 and 2
 - open air auditoriums see Control of internal fire and smoke spread
 - reference buildings **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, 1.1.3, **H1/AS1** 2.1.3, 2.1.4
 - siteworks
 - see **Structure**
 - small buildings **H1/VM1** 1.0.1, 1.1.1, **H1/AS1** 1.0.2, 2.1, 4.0.1
 - theatres see **Control of internal fire and smoke spread**
 - three storey buildings **G13/AS1** Figure 7
 - timber framed buildings **B1/AS1** 3.0, **B1/AS3** 1.1.1
 - two-floor buildings **F7/AS1** 1.1.2 a) b)
 - wharenui **H1/VM1** 1.1.3

C

- Call points..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.4
- Camping grounds..... **NZBC/G2.2**, G2.3.4; **G1/AS1** 3.4.2, Tables 1 to 3; **G2/AS1** Table 1
see also Communal residential buildings
- Car park ventilation **G4/AS1** 1.5.4
- Car parking buildings
see Commercial buildings, Vehicles
- Carports
see Outbuildings
- Catchment
characteristics **E1/VM1** 1.0.2 a), 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.3, 4.2.1
- Ceilings..... **NZBC/G6.3.1**; **G3/AS1** 2.1.2, 2.2.3
floor/ceiling assemblies **G6/AS1** Figure 3
- Centres for people with disabilities
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Child care centres
see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential Buildings
- Children **NZBC/D1.3.3 (h)**, **F4.3.3**, **F4.3.4 (f)**, F4.3.5 (a), F5.2 (d),
F5.3.3, G15.3.2 (g); **D1/AS1** 4.1.8 a);
F4/AS1 1.2.1, Figures 1-4; **F5/AS1** 1.0.2
See also Early childhood centres
- Chimneys **B1/AS1** 1.2, 8.0, **B1/AS3** 2.1
see Prevention of fire occurring
- bracing units **B1/AS3** 1.9, 1.9.3, 1.9.6, Table 2
- brick chimneys **B1/AS3** 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) b), 1.2.1 a), 1.6.2 a),
1.7.1, 1.7.6, 1.8.1, 1.8.5 a), Figures 2 to 4 and 7, Table 1
- cantilever height **B1/AS3** 1.1.2
- chimney bases **B1/AS3** 1.1.3 a), 1.6.1, 1.9.4 b)
- chimney breasts **B1/AS3** 1.5, Table 1
- chimney depth **B1/AS3** 1.1.3
- chimney height **B1/AS3** 1.1.2
- chimney liners **B1/AS3** 1.1.4
- chimney lintels **B1/AS3** Table 1
- chimney materials **B1/AS3** 1.8
- chimney stacks **B1/AS3** 1.1.2, 1.6.1
- chimney wall thickness **B1/AS3** 1.2, 1.2.1
- chimney width **B1/AS3** 1.1.3
- concrete chimneys **B1/AS3** 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) c), 1.2.1 b) c), 1.6.2 a) b),
1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.2, 1.8.5 b), Figures 4 and 5, Table 1
- concrete masonry **B1/AS3** 1.8.4
- floor brackets **B1/AS3** 1.7.1, 1.7.3 to 1.7.5, 1.9.4 b) c), Figure 6
- foundations **B1/AS3** 1.1.2, 1.1.3 a), 1.3, 1.3.1,
1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.7.4, 1.7.5, 1.8.4, Figure 1
- foundation slabs **B1/AS3** 1.1.2, 1.3.2, 1.7.4, 1.7.5
- gathers **B1/AS3** 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.7.5
- hearths **B1/AS3** 1.4, 2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3
- hearth slabs **B1/AS3** 2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3
- packers **B1/AS3** 1.7.2, 1.7.6 c)
- precast pumice concrete chimneys **B1/AS3** 1.1.1 b), 1.1.3 a) c),
1.2.1 c), 1.6.2 b), 1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.3,
1.8.5 c), Figures 5 and 7, Table 1
- compressive strength **B1/AS3** 1.8.3 c)
- construction of **B1/AS3** 1.8.3
- restraint **B1/AS3** 1.7, 1.7.1, 1.7.13, Figures 6 and 7
- roof brackets **B1/AS3** 1.7.1, 1.7.3, 1.7.4, Figure 6
- roof ties **B1/AS3** 1.7.5
- structural diaphragms **B1/AS3** 1.9.5
- wall ties **B1/AS3** 1.7.5, 1.7.7, 1.7.8
- closely spaced wall ties **B1/AS3** 1.7.5, 1.9.4 c)

- Churches
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Cinemas **NZBC/G5.3.5**
see also Communal non-residential buildings
- Cladding finish colours **E2/AS1 2.4**
- Classified uses **NZBC/A1**
- Cleaners' sinks **G13/AS1 Table 2**
- Clubrooms
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Cold water expansion valves (explosion control valves) **G12/AS1 6.3.3 a), 6.6.2, 6.6.3,**
Figures 8 to 10, Table 6
installation **G12/AS1 6.6.5**
relief valve drains **G12/AS1 6.7, Figures 8 to 10 and 13**
- Colleges
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Commercial buildings **NZBC/A1 5.0, E3.3.1, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) (b), G3.3.2 (b),** G3.3.6,
G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G8.2, G9.3.4, H1.2 (c);
G3/AS1 2.0.1; H1/AS1 1.0
- Communal non-residential buildings **NZBC/A1 4.0, E1.3.2, E3.3.1,**
G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G5.3.5, G8.2,
G9.3.4, H1.2 (c); **H1/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4**
assembly care **NZBC/A1 4.0.3**
assembly service **NZBC/A1 4.0.2, H1.2 (a)**
halls **NZBC/G5.3.5**
places of assembly **D1/AS1 8.0**
- Communal residential buildings **NZBC/A1 3.0, G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G8.2, G9.3.4;**
D1/AS1 9.0, 9.1.1; H1/AS1 1.0.1
community care **NZBC/A1 4.0.2**
community service **NZBC/A1 3.0.2**
- Communes
see Housing, group dwellings
- Community care buildings
see Communal residential buildings
- Community service buildings **D1/AS1 1.1.3**
see also Communal residential buildings
- Computer centres
see Commercial buildings
- Concealed spaces
see **External Moisture, Internal Moisture, Control of internal fire and smoke spread**
- Concealed works **B1/VM4 A1.2.1 b)**
- Concrete **B2/AS1 3.1**
see also Design, concrete
- Condensation
see **Internal Moisture**
- Construction moisture **E2/AS1 10.0**
maximum acceptable moisture contents **E2/AS1 10.2**
measuring moisture content **E2/AS1 10.3**
concrete floors **E2/AS1 10.3.2**
timber **E2/AS1 10.3.1**
moisture in materials **E2/AS1 10.1**
- Construction site barriers **F4/AS1 1.2.6**

Construction and Demolition Hazards	F5
areas accessible to the public.....	NZBC/F5.3.2
barriers.....	NZBC/F5.3.2, F5.3.4
demolition sites.....	F5/AS1 1.0
entry of children.....	NZBC/F5.2 (d), F5.3.3; F5/AS1 1.0.2
falling objects.....	NZBC/F5.2 (a) (b), F5.3.1
lifting equipment.....	NZBC/F5.3.4
Contaminants.....	G14/VM1 1.6, Table 1
<i>see also</i> Hazardous agents on site , contaminants	
Control panel.....	F7/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 2.2.2 b)
Control of external fire spread.....	C/AS1 Part 5, C/AS2 Part 5, C/AS3 Part 5, C/AS4 Part 5, C/AS5 Part 5, C/AS6 Part 5, C/AS7 Part 5
carports and similar structures.....	C/AS1 5.5
external walls – table method.....	C/AS2 5.5, Figures 5.2 and 5.3, Tables 5.2 and 5.3, C/AS3 5.5, Figures 5.2 and 5.3, Tables 5.2 and 5.3, C/AS4 5.5, Figures 5.2 and 5.3, Tables 5.2 and 5.3, C/AS5 5.5, Figures 5.2 and 5.3, C/AS6 5.5, Figures 5.2 and 5.3
exterior surface finishes.....	C/AS1 5.4, Table 5.1, C/AS2 5.8, C/AS3 5.8, C/AS4 5.8, C/AS5 5.8, C/AS6 5.8
external walls.....	C/AS2 5.8.1, 5.8.2, 5.8.3, 5.8.4, C/AS3 5.8.1, 5.8.2, 5.8.4, C/AS4 5.8.1, 5.8.2, 5.8.3, 5.8.4, C/AS5 5.8.1, 5.8.2, 5.8.3, 5.8.4, C/AS6 5.8.1, 5.8.2, 5.8.3, 5.8.4
fire resistance ratings.....	C/AS1 5.1
fire separation for buildings with more than one title.....	C/AS2 5.1, C/AS3 5.1, C/AS4 5.1, C/AS5 5.1, C/AS6 5.1
FRRs of external walls.....	C/AS2 5.3, C/AS3 5.3, C/AS4 5.3, C/AS5 5.3, C/AS6 5.3
horizontal fire spread from external walls.....	C/AS2 5.2, C/AS3 5.2, C/AS4 5.2, C/AS5 5.2, C/AS6 5.2
analysis required for all external walls.....	C/AS2 5.2.7, C/AS3 5.2.7, C/AS4 5.2.7, C/AS5 5.2.7, C/AS6 5.2.7
notional boundary – firecells on the same property.....	C/AS2 5.2.8, 5.2.9, C/AS3 5.2.8, 5.2.9, C/AS4 5.2.8, 5.2.9, C/AS5 5.2.8, 5.2.9, C/AS6 5.2.8, 5.2.9
separation.....	C/AS2 5.2.1, 5.2.2, 5.2.3, 5.2.4, 5.2.5, 5.2.6, C/AS3 5.2.1, 5.2.2, 5.2.3, 5.2.4, 5.2.5, 5.2.6, C/AS4 5.2.1, 5.2.2, 5.2.3, 5.2.4, 5.2.5, 5.2.6, C/AS5 5.2.1, 5.2.2, 5.2.3, 5.2.4, 5.2.5, 5.2.6, C/AS6 5.2.1, 5.2.2, 5.2.3, 5.2.4, 5.2.5, 5.2.6
small openings and fire resisting glazing.....	C/AS2 5.4, Figure 5.1, Table 5.1, C/AS3 5.4, Figure 5.1, Table 5.1, C/AS4 5.4, Figure 5.1, Table 5.1, C/AS5 5.4, Figure 5.1, Table 5.1, C/AS6 5.4, Figure 5.1
horizontal fire spread from roofs and open-sided buildings.....	C/AS2 5.6, C/AS3 5.6, C/AS4 5.6, C/AS5 5.6, C/AS6 5.6, C/AS7 5.6
open sided buildings.....	C/AS2 5.6.6, 5.6.7, Figure 5.5, C/AS3 5.6.6, 5.6.7, Figure 5.5, C/AS4 5.6.6, 5.6.7, Figure 5.5, C/AS5 5.6.6, 5.6.7, Figure 5.5, C/AS6 5.6.6, 5.6.7, Figure 5.5
parapets for storage.....	C/AS2 5.6.2, C/AS3 5.6.2, C/AS4 5.6.2, C/AS5 5.6.2, C/AS6 5.6.2
protection from a lower roof.....	C/AS1 5.3
roof projections.....	C/AS1 5.2, C/AS2 5.6.3, 5.6.4, 5.6.5, Figure 5.4, C/AS3 5.6.3, 5.6.4, 5.6.5, Figure 5.4, C/AS4 5.6.3, 5.6.4, 5.6.5, Figure 5.4, C/AS5 5.6.3, 5.6.4, 5.6.5, Figure 5.4, C/AS6 5.6.3, 5.6.4, 5.6.5, Figure 5.4

Control of external fire spread (continued)

- vertical fire spread **C/AS2** 5.7, **C/AS3** 5.7, **C/AS4** 5.7, **C/AS5** 5.7,
C/AS6 5.7, **C/AS7** 5.7
- different levels of the same building..... **C/AS2** 5.7.10, 5.7.11, Figure 5.7,
C/AS3 5.7.10, 5.7.11, Figure 5.7,
C/AS4 5.7.10, 5.7.11, Figure 5.7,
C/AS5 5.7.10, 5.7.11, Figure 5.7, **C/AS6**
- external thermal insulation – multi-storey buildings...**C/AS2** 5.7.17, 5.7.18, Figure 5.8,
C/AS3 5.7.17, 5.7.18, Figure 5.8,
C/AS4 5.7.17, 5.7.18, Figure 5.8,
C/AS5 5.7.17, 5.7.18, Figure 5.8,
C/AS6 5.7.17, 5.7.18, Figure 5.8
- roofs **C/AS2** 5.7.1, 5.7.2, **C/AS3** 5.7.1, 5.7.2, **C/AS4** 5.7.1, 5.7.2,
C/AS5 5.7.1, 5.7.2, **C/AS6** 5.7.1, 5.7.2
- external exitways over roofs..... **C/AS2** 5.7.3, **C/AS3** 5.7.3,
C/AS4 5.7.3, **C/AS5** 5.7.3, **C/AS6** 5.7.3
- fire spread from an adjacent lower roof..... **C/AS2** 5.7.6, 5.7.7, 5.7.8, 5.7.9,
Figure 5.6, **C/AS3** 5.7.6, 5.7.7, 5.7.8, 5.7.9, Figure 5.6,
C/AS4 5.7.6, 5.7.7, 5.7.8, 5.7.9, Figure 5.6,
C/AS5 5.7.6, 5.7.7, 5.7.8, 5.7.9, Figure 5.6
- primary elements **C/AS2** 5.7.4, 5.7.5, **C/AS3** 5.7.4, 5.7.5,
C/AS4 5.7.4, 5.7.5, **C/AS5** 5.7.4, 5.7.5, **C/AS6** 5.7.4, 5.7.5
- roof storage **C/AS2** 5.7.16, **C/AS3** 5.7.16,
C/AS4 5.7.16, **C/AS5** 5.7.16, **C/AS6** 5.7.16
- roof vehicle parking **C/AS7** 5.7.19, 5.7.20
- spandrels and apron projections **C/AS2** 5.7.12, 5.7.13, 5.7.14, 5.7.15, Table 5.4,
C/AS3 5.7.12, 5.7.13, 5.7.14, 5.7.15, Table 5.4,
C/AS4 5.7.12, 5.7.13, 5.7.14, 5.7.15, Table 5.4,
C/AS5 5.7.12, 5.7.13, 5.7.14, 5.7.15, Table 5.4
- Control of internal fire and smoke spread..... **C/AS1** Part 4, **C/AS2** Part 4, **C/AS3** Part 4,
C/AS4 Part 4, **C/AS5** Part 4, **C/AS6** Part 4, **C/AS7** Part 4
- building services plant. **C/AS2** 4.18, **C/AS3** 4.18, **C/AS4** 4.18, **C/AS5** 4.18, **C/AS6** 4.18
- air handling systems..... **C/AS2** 4.18.2, **C/AS3** 4.18.2,
C/AS4 4.18.2, **C/AS5** 4.18.2, **C/AS6** 4.18.2
- automatic activation **C/AS2** 4.18.1, **C/AS3** 4.18.1,
C/AS4 4.18.1, **C/AS5** 4.18.1, **C/AS6** 4.18.1
- closures in fire and smoke separations..... **C/AS2** 4.16, **C/AS3** 4.16,
C/AS4 4.16, **C/AS5** 4.16, **C/AS6** 4.16
- doorset markings..... **C/AS2** 4.16.5, 4.16.6, **C/AS3** 4.16.5, 4.16.6,
C/AS4 4.16.5, 4.16.6, **C/AS5** 4.16.5, 4.16.6,
C/AS6 4.16.5, 4.16.6
- fire door and smoke control door installation..... **C/AS2** 4.16.4, **C/AS3** 4.16.4,
C/AS4 4.16.4, **C/AS5** 4.16.4, **C/AS6** 4.16.4
- fire doors **C/AS2** 4.16.9, Figures 4.14, 4.15, 4.16,
C/AS3 4.16.9, Figures 4.14, 4.15, 4.16,
C/AS4 4.16.9, Figures 4.14, 4.15, 4.16,
C/AS5 4.16.9, Figures 4.14, 4.15, 4.16,
C/AS6 4.16.9, Figures 4.14, 4.15, 4.16
- glazing **C/AS2** 4.16.7, **C/AS3** 4.16.7,
C/AS4 4.16.7, **C/AS5** 4.16.7, **C/AS6** 4.16.7,
- lift landing doors..... **C/AS2** 4.16.11, **C/AS3** 4.16.11,
C/AS4 4.16.11, **C/AS5** 4.16.11, **C/AS6** 4.16.11
- introduction..... **C/AS2** 4.16.1, 4.16.2, 4.16.3,
C/AS3 4.16.1, 4.16.2, 4.16.3, **C/AS4** 4.16.1, 4.16.2, 4.16.3,
C/AS5 4.16.1, 4.16.2, 4.16.3, **C/AS6** 4.16.1, 4.16.2, 4.16.3
- protected shaft access panels **C/AS2** 4.16.10, Figure 4.17,
C/AS3 4.16.10, Figure 4.17, **C/AS4** 4.16.10, Figure 4.17,
C/AS5 4.16.10, Figure 4.17, **C/AS6** 4.16.10, Figure 4.17
- smoke control doors **C/AS2** 4.16.8, Figures 4.12, 4.13 and 4.14,
C/AS3 4.16.8, Figures 4.12, 4.13 and 4.14,
C/AS4 4.16.8, Figures 4.12, 4.13 and 4.14,
C/AS5 4.16.8, Figures 4.12, 4.13 and 4.14,
C/AS6 4.16.8, Figures 4.12, 4.13 and 4.14

Control of internal fire and smoke spread (continued)

- concealed spaces..... **C/AS2** 4.15, **C/AS3** 4.15, **C/AS4** 4.15, **C/AS5** 4.15, **C/AS6** 4.15
 cavity barriers in walls and floors **C/AS2** 4.15.3, Figures 4.10 and 4.11,
C/AS3 4.15.3, Figures 4.10 and 4.11,
C/AS4 4.15.3, Figures 4.10 and 4.11,
C/AS5 4.15.3, Figures 4.10 and 4.11,
C/AS6 4.15.3, Figures 4.10 and 4.11
- construction..... **C/AS2** 4.15.5, **C/AS3** 4.15.5,
C/AS4 4.15.5, **C/AS5** 4.15.5, **C/AS6** 4.15.5
- exceptions **C/AS2** 4.15.4, **C/AS3** 4.15.4,
C/AS4 4.15.4, **C/AS5** 4.15.4, **C/AS6** 4.15.4
- unsprinklered firecell restrictions **C/AS2** 4.15.6, 4.15.7, 4.15.8,
C/AS4 4.15.6, 4.15.7, 4.15.8
- within firecells **C/AS2** 4.15.2, Figure 4.9,
C/AS3 4.15.2, Figure 4.9,
C/AS4 4.15.2, Figure 4.9,
C/AS5 4.15.2, Figure 4.9,
C/AS6 4.15.2, Figure 4.9
- exhibition and retail areas – special requirements **C/AS4** 4.7, **C/AS6** 4.7
- exitways see Exitways
- firecells see Firecells
- fire dampers **C/AS2** 4.16.12, **C/AS3** 4.16.12,
C/AS4 4.16.12, **C/AS5** 4.16.12, **C/AS6** 4.16.12
- fire separations **C/AS1** 4.1
- fire stopping **C/AS2** 4.4, **C/AS3** 4.4, **C/AS4** 4.4, **C/AS5** 4.4, **C/AS6** 4.4
 fire stops..... **C/AS2** 4.4.2, 4.4.3, 4.4.4, **C/AS3** 4.4.2, 4.4.3, 4.4.4,
C/AS4 4.4.2, 4.4.3, 4.4.4, **C/AS5** 4.4.2, 4.4.3, 4.4.4,
C/AS6 4.4.2, 4.4.3, 4.4.4
- introduction..... **C/AS2** 4.4.1, **C/AS3** 4.4.1,
C/AS4 4.4.1, **C/AS5** 4.4.1, **C/AS6** 4.4.1
- fire shutters **C/AS2** 4.16.13, 4.16.14, 4.16.15,
C/AS3 4.16.13, 4.16.14, 4.16.15, **C/AS4** 4.16.13, 4.16.14, 4.16.15,
C/AS5 4.16.13, 4.16.14, 4.16.15, **C/AS6** 4.16.13, 4.16.14, 4.16.15
- floors **C/AS2** 4.13, **C/AS3** 4.13, **C/AS4** 4.13, **C/AS5** 4.13, **C/AS6** 4.13
 basement floors **C/AS2** 4.13.9, **C/AS3** 4.13.9,
C/AS4 4.13.9, **C/AS5** 4.13.9, **C/AS6** 4.13.9
- flytowers, gantries, walkways and similar structures ... **C/AS4** 4.13.8, **C/AS6** 4.13.8
- intermediate floors **C/AS2** 4.13.3, 4.13.4, 4.13.5, 4.13.6,
C/AS3 4.13.3, 4.13.4, 4.13.5, 4.13.6,
C/AS4 4.13.3, 4.13.4, 4.13.5, 4.13.6,
C/AS5 4.13.3, 4.13.4, 4.13.5, 4.13.6,
C/AS6 4.13.4, 4.13.5, 4.13.6
- glazing in fire and smoke separations **C/AS2** 4.2, **C/AS3** 4.2,
C/AS4 4.2, **C/AS5** 4.2, **C/AS6** 4.2
- fire doors and smoke control doors **C/AS2** 4.2.4, 4.2.5,
C/AS3 4.2.4, 4.2.5 **C/AS4** 4.2.4, 4.2.5,
C/AS5 4.2.4, 4.2.5 **C/AS6** 4.2.4, 4.2.5
- interior surface finishes, floor coverings
 and suspended flexible fabrics **C/AS2** 4.17.1, Table 4.1,
C/AS3 4.17.1, Table 4.1, **C/AS4** 4.17.1, Table 4.1,
C/AS5 4.17.1, Table 4.1, **C/AS6** 4.17.1, Table 4.1
- air ducts **C/AS2** 4.17.11, **C/AS3** 4.17.11,
C/AS4 4.17.11, **C/AS5** 4.17.11, **C/AS6** 4.17.11
- educational buildings..... **C/AS4** 4.17.7
- exceptions **C/AS2** 4.17.6, **C/AS3** 4.17.6, **C/AS4** 4.17.6,
C/AS5 4.17.6, **C/AS6** 4.17.6
- exposed combustible insulating materials..... **C/AS2** 4.17.2, **C/AS3**, **C/AS4** 4.17.2,
C/AS5 4.17.2, **C/AS6** 4.17.2
- flooring **C/AS2** 4.17.3, 4.17.4, Table 4.2,
C/AS3 4.17.3, 4.17.4, Table 4.2, **C/AS4** 4.17.3, 4.17.4, Table 4.2,
C/AS5 4.17.3, 4.17.4, Table 4.2, **C/AS6** 4.17.3, 4.17.4, Table 4.2
 wood and wood panel products..... **C/AS2** 4.17.5, **C/AS3** 4.17.5,
C/AS4 4.17.5, **C/AS5** 4.17.5, **C/AS6** 4.17.5
- foamed plastics **C/AS1** 4.2.2, **C/AS2** 4.17.2, **C/AS3** 4.17.2,
C/AS4 4.17.2, **C/AS5** 4.17.2, **C/AS6** 4.17.2
- membrane structures..... **C/AS4** 4.17.9, 4.17.10, **C/AS5** 4.17.9, 4.17.10
- suspended flexible fabrics **C/AS2** 4.17.8, **C/AS3** 4.17.8,
C/AS4 4.17.8, **C/AS5** 4.17.8, **C/AS6** 4.17.8
- surface finishes **C/AS1** 4.2

Control of internal fire and smoke spread (continued)

- intermittent activities **C/AS2** 4.10, **C/AS3** 4.10, **C/AS4** 4.10,
C/AS5 4.10, **C/AS6** 4.10, **C/AS7** 4.10
- plant, boiler and incinerator rooms..... **C/AS2** 4.10.3, 4.10.4, Figure 4.5,
C/AS3 4.10.3, 4.10.4, Figure 4.5, **C/AS4** 4.10.3, 4.10.4, Figure 4.5,
C/AS5 4.10.3, 4.10.4, Figure 4.5, **C/AS6** 4.10.3, 4.10.4, Figure 4.5
- solid waste storage **C/AS2** 4.10.2, **C/AS3** 4.10.2,
C/AS4 4.10.2, **C/AS5** 4.10.2, **C/AS6** 4.10.2, **C/AS7** 4.10.2
- support activities **C/AS4** 4.10.1, **C/AS5** 4.10.1, **C/AS6** 4.10.1
- long corridor subdivision **C/AS2** 4.12, Figure 4.7,
C/AS3 4.12, Figure 4.7, **C/AS4** 4.12, Figure 4.7,
C/AS5 4.12, Figure 4.7, **C/AS6** 4.12, Figure 4.7
- protected shafts **C/AS2** 4.11, Figure 4.6,
C/AS3 4.11, Figure 4.6, **C/AS4** 4.11, Figure 4.6,
C/AS5 4.11, Figure 4.6, **C/AS6** 4.11, Figure 4.6
- access panels **C/AS2** 4.16.11, Figure 4.17,
C/AS3 4.16.11, Figure 4.17, **C/AS4** 4.16.11, Figure 4.17,
C/AS5 4.16.11, Figure 4.17, **C/AS6** 4.16.11, Figure 4.17
- fire separation..... **C/AS2** 4.11.2, 4.11.3, **C/AS3** 4.11.2, 4.11.3,
C/AS4 4.11.2, 4.11.3, **C/AS5** 4.11.2, 4.11.3, **C/AS6**
- lifts, conveyors and services..... **C/AS2** 4.11.1, **C/AS3** 4.11.1, **C/AS4** 4.11.1,
C/AS5 4.11.1, **C/AS6** 4.11.2, 4.11.3
- openings **C/AS2** 4.11.4, **C/AS3** 4.11.4,
C/AS4 4.11.4, **C/AS5** 4.11.4, **C/AS6** 4.11.4
- solid waste and linen chutes **C/AS2** 4.11.5, 4.11.6, **C/AS3** 4.11.5, 4.11.6,
C/AS4 4.11.5, 4.11.6, **C/AS5** 4.11.5, 4.11.6,
C/AS6 4.11.5, 4.11.6
- structural stability during fire **C/AS2** 4.3, **C/AS3** 4.3,
C/AS4 4.3, **C/AS5** 4.3, **C/AS6** 4.3
- building elements with an FRR **C/AS2** 4.3.1, 4.3.2, **C/AS3** 4.3.1, 4.3.2,
C/AS4 4.3.1, 4.3.2, **C/AS5** 4.3.1, 4.3.2, **C/AS6** 4.3.1, 4.3.2
- horizontal stability..... **C/AS2** 4.3.5, **C/AS3** 4.3.5,
C/AS4 4.3.5, **C/AS5** 4.3.5, **C/AS6** 4.3.5
- unrated primary elements..... **C/AS2** 4.3.3, Figure 4.1,
C/AS3 4.3.3, Figure 4.1, **C/AS4** 4.3.3, Figure 4.1,
C/AS5 4.3.3, Figure 4.1, **C/AS6** 4.3.3, Figure 4.1
- vertical stability **C/AS2** 4.3.4, **C/AS3** 4.3.4,
C/AS4 4.3.4, **C/AS5** 4.3.4, **C/AS6** 4.3.4
- subfloor spaces..... **C/AS2** 4.14, Figure 4.8,
C/AS3 4.14, Figure 4.8, **C/AS4** 4.14, Figure 4.8,
C/AS5 4.14, Figure 4.8, **C/AS6** 4.14, Figure 4.8
- theatres – special requirements..... **C/AS4** 4.6
- closures in proscenium walls **C/AS4** 4.6.3, 4.6.4, 4.6.5, Figure 4.4
- stages **C/AS4** 4.6.2
- tiered seating..... **C/AS4** 4.8.1, 4.8.2, 4.8.3
- vertical safe path smoke separation **C/AS2** 4.9.7, **C/AS4** 4.9.7,
C/AS5 4.9.7, **C/AS6** 4.9.7
- Corridors **C/AS1** 6.13.1, Figure 6.5
see also Access Routes
- Corrosives
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 8
- Creep
see Structure, loads
- Cross connections
see Protection of water supplies
- Cyclic loads
see Structure, loads

D

Dampness

see **External Moisture, Internal Moisture**

Dams

see Ancillary buildings

Dangerous goods

see also **Hazardous Building Materials, Hazardous Substances and Processes**

Day care institution

see Early childhood centres, Communal non-residential buildings

Dead ends

see Escape routesDecks and pergolas..... **E2/AS1** 7.0*see also* Membrane roofs and decks*see also* Enclosed Balustradesattachment to building structure..... **E2/AS1** 7.2pergolas **E2/AS1** 7.2.2, Figure 15slatted timber decks to walls **E2/AS1** 7.2.1, Figure 15cantilevered decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.2.1.1, Figure 16level thresholds **E2/AS1** 7.3, Figures 17A and 17Benclosed decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.3.1removable surfaces..... **E2/AS1** 7.3.1.1, Figure 16timber removable surface **E2/AS1** 7.3.1.2ground floor level access **E2/AS1** 7.3.2, Figure 17Bconcrete slab **E2/AS1** Paragraph 7.3.2.1, Figure 17Btimber floor..... **E2/AS1** Paragraph 7.3.2.2, Figure 17Bthresholds for decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.1, Figure 14enclosed decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.1.2slatted decks **E2/AS1** 7.1.1, Figure 14

Deflections

see **Structure**

Demolition

see **Construction and Demolition Hazards**Dental surgeries..... **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)***see also* Commercial buildings

Design

aluminium..... **B1/VM1** 7.0, **B1/AS1** 4.0concrete..... **B1/VM1** 3.0concrete masonry **B1/VM1** 4.0, **B1/AS3** 1.3.3

drains

see Drainsearth building..... **B1/VM1** 8.0, **B1/AS1** 4.0

foundations

see Foundationsloadings **B1/VM1** 2.0earthquake..... **B1/VM1** 1.0, 2.0, **B1/AS1** 1.4, **B1/AS3** 1.9, Table 2limit state..... **B1/VM1** 2.0, 7.1siteworks **B1/VM1** 10.0steel..... **B1/VM1** 5.0strength reduction factor **B1/VM4** 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4structural design action standards **B1/VM1** 2.0timber **B1/VM1** 6.0, **B1/AS1** 3.0

windows

see Windows

Design loads

see **Structure**, loads

- Design scenarios..... **C/VM2** Part 4
- challenging fire (CF) **C/VM2** 4.9, Figure 1.1 j)
 - fire blocks exit (BE) **C/VM2** 4.1, Figure 1.1 b)
 - fire in normally unoccupied room threatening occupants of other rooms (UT) **C/VM2** 4.2, Figure 1.1 c)
 - fire starts in a concealed space (CS) **C/VM2** 4.3, Figure 1.1 d)
 - firefighting operations (FO)..... **C/VM2** 4.8, Figure 1.1 i)
 - horizontal fire spread (HS) **C/VM2** 4.5, Table 4.1, Figure 1.1 f)
 - rapid fire spread involving internal surface linings (IS)..... **C/VM2** 4.7, Figure 1.1 h)
 - robustness check (RC)..... **C/VM2** 4.10, Figure 1.1 k)
 - rules and parameters **C/VM2** Part 2
 - applying the design scenarios..... **C/VM2** 2.1
 - design fire characteristics **C/VM2** 2.3
 - full burnout design fires **C/VM2** 2.4
 - modifications to the design FLED **C/VM2** 2.4.1, Table 2.3
 - openings for full burnout design fires..... **C/VM2** 2.4.2
 - structural fire severity for interconnected floors **C/VM2** 2.4.3
 - time equivalence formula..... **C/VM2** 2.4.4, Table 2.4
 - modelling post-flashover fires..... **C/VM2** 2.3.3, Table 2.2
 - pre-flashover design fires..... **C/VM2** 2.3.1, Table 2.1
 - post-flashover design fires..... **C/VM2** 2.3.2
 - fire modelling rules..... **C/VM2** 2.2
 - life safety design **C/VM2** 2.2.1
 - resistance of fire separations and structural design **C/VM2** 2.2.2
 - smouldering fire (SF)..... **C/VM2** 4.4, Figure 1.1 e)
 - vertical fire spread involving external cladding..... **C/VM2** 4.6, Table 2, Figure 1.1 g)
- Detached dwellings
see Housing
- Differential movement
see **Structure**, loads
- Disabled persons
see a Person with a disability
- Discharge pipes **G3/AS1** 1.1.5; **G13/AS1** 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.6, 5.1.1, 5.5, 5.7.3, Figures 6 and 11, Table 4
- branch discharge pipes **G13/AS1** Figure 7
 - diameters..... **G13/AS1** 3.3.2, 4.3, 5.3, Table 6, **G13/AS2** 3.6, 4.2
 - fixture discharge pipes..... **G13/AS1** Figures 7 and 8, Tables 2 and 4
 - gradient **G13/AS1** 4.4, 5.4, **G13/AS2** 3.5, Table 2
 - waste pipes
 - combined waste pipes **G13/AS1** Figure 5
 - developed lengths..... **G13/AS1** Figures 5, 6 and 8
- Discharge stacks **G13/AS1** 4.2.2 a), 4.5.1 b), 4.7, 5.3.1, 5.6, Figures 7 to 9, Tables 3, 4 and 6
- see also Discharge pipes, Pipes
 - discharge stack vents..... **G13/AS1** 4.7.1 b), 5.2.1 b), 5.3.1, 5.6.1, 5.6.3 b), Figures 7 and 8, Table 6, **G13/AS2** 4.1.5, Figure 5
- Discharge units **G13/AS1** Table 2, **G13/AS2** Table 2
- Dishwashing machine..... **G13/AS1** 3.3.2 a) e), Table 2
- Domestic buildings
see Housing
- Domestic smoke alarms **F7/AS1** 3.0
- alarm test facility..... **F7/AS1** 3.2.4
 - hush facility **F7/AS1** 3.2.3
 - location **F7/AS1** 3.3
 - maintenance..... **F7/AS1** 3.4
 - scope..... **F7/AS1** 3.1
 - Type 1 – Domestic smoke alarm system..... **F7/AS1** 3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4

- Doors
see also Control of internal fire and smoke spread, Windows and doors
NZBC/D1.3.4 (f), D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (n), D1.3.4 (f), D2.3.5 (c), F5.3.2 (d); C/AS1 3.9.1, 3.11.6, 6.19.4; **D1/AS1** 7.0, Figure 27;
- accessible doors..... **D1/AS1** 7.0.3 to 7.0.5
- frameless glass doors **D1/AS1** 7.0.7
- glazing..... **D1/AS1** 7.0.4, Figure 28
- handles **D1/AS1** 7.0.5
- hold-open devices **F7/AS1** 1.3.6, 1.5.2
- lobby doors..... **D1/AS1** 7.0.1
- revolving doors, automatic doors and
 access control systems..... **D1/AS1** 7.0.6, Figure 29
- turnstiles **D1/AS1** 7.0.6
- visibility **D1/AS1** 7.0.4
- width..... **D1/AS1** 7.0.3
- Downlights..... **C/AS1** 9.4
- Downpipes..... **E1/AS1** 3.4.2 a) b), 3.7.8, 4.0, 5.1.1
- installation **E1/AS1** 4.3
- materials **E1/AS1** 4.1, Table 4
- sizing..... **E1/AS1** 4.2, Table 5
- Drainage system **G13/AS1** 5.1.2, 5.5.2, 5.7.3, 5.7.4 b), **G13/AS2** 1.0.2, 3.1.1, 3.3.2, 4.1.1, 5.10.1
- Drains **NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.1 (a), G13.3.2, G13.3.3, G15.3.3; B1/VM1** 11.0, **B1/AS1** 6.0; **G13/AS1** 4.2.2 d), **G13/AS2** 1.0
- access points..... **E1/AS1** 3.7, 3.7.3, 3.7.7, 3.7.8
- access chambers..... **E1/VM1** 5.0.1, **E1/AS1** 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12
- inspection chambers **E1/AS1** 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11
- inspection points **E1/AS1** 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b)
- rodding points..... **E1/AS1** 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10
- alignment..... **E1/AS1** 3.3, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5
see also Drain, layout
- bedding and backfilling **E1/AS1** 3.9, 3.9.2, Figure 13; **G13/AS2** Figure 7
- alternative solutions **E1/AS1** 3.9.8
- materials **E1/AS1** 3.9.5; **G13/AS2** Table 1
- placing and compacting..... **E1/AS1** 3.9.6; **G13/AS2** 5.5
- proximity to buildings **E1/AS1** 3.9.7, Figure 14;
- trench slope..... **E1/AS1** 3.9.3
- trench width **E1/AS1** 3.9.4
- bends..... **G13/AS2** 3.1
- bubble-up chamber system **E1/AS1** 3.4.2, Figures 6 and 7
- connections..... **G13/AS2** 3.2.1, Figure 1
- construction **G13/AS2** 5.2, Figure 7
- diameter
see Drains, sizing
- disused drains **G13/AS2** 5.10
- downstream water systems **E1/VM1** 4.3
- drain vent pipes **G13/AS2** Figure 3, Table 3
- drains under buildings **E1/AS1** 3.7.6 to 3.7.8
- gradient **E1/AS1** 3.3.1, 3.7.3 b); **G13/AS1** Table 5, **G13/AS2** 3.5, Table 2
- minimum gradient **E1/AS1** 3.4, Table 2
- installation **G13/AS2** 5.0, 5.5
- joints..... **E1/AS1** 3.5, Table 3; **G13/AS2** 5.1
- junctions..... **G13/AS2** 3.2
- layout..... **E1/AS1** 3.3.1, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5
- leakage tests **E1/VM1** 8.0, **E1/AS1** 3.8
- high pressure air test..... **E1/VM1** 8.3
- low pressure air test..... **E1/VM1** 8.2
- water test **E1/VM1** 8.1

Drains (continued)

maintenance access

see Maintenance access to drainsAmend 12
Oct 2011

materials	E1/AS1 3.1, Table 1; G13/AS2 2.0, Table 1
open water, upstream of site	E1/VM1 4.2
pipe water, upstream of site	E1/VM1 4.1
quantity	E1/VM1 4.1.10
tailwater depth	E1/VM1 4.1.6, 4.1.7
proximity to buildings	G13/AS2 5.6, Figure 8
secondary flow	E1/VM1 4.0, 4.1.11 E1/AS1 1.0.1 d)
downstream drainage	E1/VM1 4.3
headwater depth	E1/VM1 4.1.4, 4.1.5, 4.1.8, 4.1.9, Figures 5 to 7, 10 and 11
site – outfall protection	E1/VM1 7.0
sizing	E1/VM1 3.0, E1/AS1 3.2, Figure 3; G13/AS2 3.6, Table 2
energy losses	E1/VM1 5.0
hydraulic design of drains	E1/VM1 1.0.4, 3.2, Figures 6 and 7
air entrainment	E1/VM1 3.2.4
headwater depth	E1/VM1 3.2.2, Figure 5 a)
minimum size	E1/VM1 3.1
minimum velocity	E1/VM1 6.0
pipe size decrease	E1/VM1 5.0.2
soak pits	E1/VM1 9.0, Figure 13
sumps	E1/AS1 3.6.1, 3.6.2, Figures 8 and 9
surface water inlets	E1/AS1 3.6
under buildings	E1/AS1 3.7.6; G13/AS2 5.8, 5.9, Figure 13
upstream water systems	E1/VM1 4.1, 4.2
ventilation	G13/AS2 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
watertightness	G13/AS2 6.1.1
Draught diverters	G4/AS1 2.3.2
Drinking fountains	G13/AS1 Table 2
Durability	B2; B2/VM1 1.0, B2/AS1 1.2, Figure 1
code compliance certificate	NZBC/B2.3
ease of access and replacement	B2/AS1 1.2.1
evaluation	B2/VM1 1.0, B2/AS1 1.2, Figure 1
examples of requirement	B2/AS1 1.3.1, Table 1
generic materials	B2/AS1 3.0
in service history	B2/VM1 1.1
laboratory testing	B2/VM1 1.2
similar materials	B2/VM1 1.3
intended life	NZBC/B1.3.1, B2.1, B2.3
5 year durability	B2/AS1 Table 1
15 year durability	B2/AS1 Table 1
50 year durability	B2/AS1 Table 1
maintenance	B2/AS1 2.0
normal	B2/AS1 2.1
scheduled	B2/AS1 2.2
specified intended life	NZBC/B2.3
timber	B2/AS1 3.2
Dynamic loads	
<i>see</i> Structure , loads	

E

- Early childhood centres..... **NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.2, G7.2, G12.3.4; G2/AS1** Table 1; **G3/AS1** 1.0.1; **G5/AS1** 1.0.3
see also Communal non-residential buildings
- Earth buildings **B2/AS1** 3.4, **E2/AS2** 1.0
- Earth pressure
see **Structure**, loads
- Earth retaining structures **B1/VM4** 2.0.3
- Earthquakes
see **Structure**, loads
- Ease of access and replacement..... **B2/AS1** 1.2.1
- Effluents..... **B1/VM4** A1.2.1 f)
- EIFS **E2/AS1** 9.9
 battens **E2/AS1** 9.9.5
 coating **E2/AS1** 9.9.6
 decorative mouldings **E2/AS1** 9.9.6.4
 finish coats **E2/AS1** 9.9.6.3
 reinforcing **E2/AS1** 9.9.6.1
 reinforcing base coat **E2/AS1** 9.9.6.2
 EIFS/floor slab junction **E2/AS1** 9.9.7, Figure 125
 general **E2/AS1** 9.9.2
 installation **E2/AS1** 9.9.4, Table 23
 fixing blocks **E2/AS1** 9.9.4.4
 fixings **E2/AS1** 9.9.4.1, Table 24
 joints **E2/AS1** 9.9.4.2
 movement control joints **E2/AS1** 9.9.4.3, Figure 124
 limitations **E2/AS1** 9.9.1
 materials **E2/AS1** 9.9.3
 fibreglass reinforcing mesh **E2/AS1** 9.9.3.2
 polystyrene sheet **E2/AS1** 9.9.3.1
 parapets and enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.9.10
 EIFS topped enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.9.10.2, Figure 129
 flush-finished balustrade top **E2/AS1** 9.9.10.1, Figures 129 and 130
 metal cappings **E2/AS1** 9.9.10.2, Figures 12, 13 and 130
 pipes and service penetrations **E2/AS1** 9.9.8, Figure 126
 windows and doors **E2/AS1** 9.9.9, Figures 17c, 127 and 128
- Electrical codes of practice..... **G9/VM1** 1.0.1, **G9/AS1** 1.0.1
- Electricity** **G9**
 electrical installations..... **NZBC/G9.1, G9.2, G9.3.1 to G9.3.3; G9/VM1** 1.0
 domestic cooking and refrigeration **G3/AS1** 1.4.1
 laundries **G2/AS1** 1.1.2
 electromechanical stress **NZBC/G9.3.1 (d)**
 essential services..... **NZBC/G9.3.2**
 external supply system **NZBC/G9.3.3**
 a person with a disability..... **NZBC/G9.3.4**
 light switches **G9/AS1** 2.0.1 a) b)
 socket outlets **G9/AS1** 2.0.1 c)
 temperature..... **NZBC/G9.3.1 (c) (d)**
- Emergency lighting
see **Lighting for Emergency**
- Enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 7.4, 9.3.9, 9.4.8, 9.5.5, 9.6.9.8, 9.7.7, 9.8.7, 9.9.10, Figures 101 and 102, Table 3
 balustrade-to-deck floor junction **E2/AS1** 7.4.3, Figures 18 and 62
 balustrade-to-wall junctions **E2/AS1** 7.4.2, Figures 11-12
 deck drainage **E2/AS1** 7.4.1
 EIFS-topped **E2/AS1** 9.9.10, Figure 129
 flush-finished topped balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.7.7.1, Figure 117
 metal cappings **E2/AS1** 7.4.4, Table 7, Figure 5
 stanchions **E2/AS1** 7.4.5, Figure 19

- Energy cut-offs **G12/AS1** 6.4.1 c), 6.5.2
- Energy Efficiency** **H1; E3/AS1** 1.1.5;
 building performance index (BPI) **NZBC/H1.3.2; H1/VM1** 1.2
 heat gain **NZBC/H1.3.3 (d) (f); H1/AS1** 4.0
 heat loss **NZBC/H1.3.4**
 heating **NZBC/H1.3.2**
 indoor temperature and humidity **NZBC/H1.2 (a), H1.3.1**
- Energy efficiency provisions
 airflow control **H1/AS1** 3.0
 artificial lighting **H1/VM1** 1.3.1, **H1/AS1** 1.0.4, 6.1.1
 building performance index **H1/VM1** 1.2, 1.2.1
 hot water systems **H1/AS1** 5.0.1
 internal moisture **H1/VM1** 1.2.1, **H1/AS1** 2.1.4
 solar heat gain **H1/AS1** 4.0
- Entrances
 principal **D1/AS1** 1.1.1
- Escalators
 see **Mechanical Installations for Access**
- Escape routes **NZBC/F6.2, F6.3.2, F8.2 (a), F8.3.3 (a);**
D1/AS1 1.1.5; **F8/AS1** 4.0
- see also **Means of Escape**
- dead ends **C/AS2** 3.8, **C/AS3** 3.8, **C/AS4** 3.8, **C/AS5** 3.8, **C/AS6** 3.8
 ladders **C/AS4** 3.8.2, **C/AS5** 3.8.2, **C/AS6** 3.8.2
 no more than 50 occupants **C/AS2** 3.8.1, **C/AS3** 3.8.1,
C/AS4 3.8.1, **C/AS5** 3.8.1, **C/AS6** 3.8.1
- doors subdividing escape routes **C/AS2** 3.15, **C/AS3** 3.15,
C/AS4 3.15, **C/AS5** 3.15, **C/AS6** 3.15
 access control systems **C/AS2** 3.15.7, **C/AS3** 3.15.7,
C/AS4 3.15.7, **C/AS5** 3.15.7, **C/AS6** 3.15.7
 automatic doors **C/AS2** 3.15.7, 3.15.8, Figure 3.24,
C/AS3 3.15.7, 3.15.8, Figure 3.24,
C/AS4 3.15.7, 3.15.8, Figure 3.24,
C/AS5 3.15.7, 3.15.8, Figure 3.24,
C/AS6 3.15.7, 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
 degree and width of opening **C/AS2** 3.15.5, Figures 3.22 and 3.23,
C/AS3 3.15.5, Figures 3.22 and 3.23,
C/AS4 3.15.5, Figures 3.22 and 3.23,
C/AS5 3.15.5, Figures 3.22 and 3.23,
C/AS6 3.15.5, Figures 3.22 and 3.23
- delayed action unlocking devices **C/AS2** 3.15.11, **C/AS3** 3.15.11,
C/AS4 3.15.11, **C/AS5** 3.15.11, **C/AS6** 3.15.11
 direction of opening **C/AS2** 3.15.3, **C/AS3** 3.15.3,
C/AS4 3.15.3, **C/AS5** 3.15.3, **C/AS6** 3.15.3
 hold-open devices **C/AS2** 3.15.9, 3.15.10, **C/AS3** 3.15.9, 3.15.10,
C/AS4 3.15.9, 3.15.10, **C/AS5** 3.15.9, 3.15.10,
C/AS6 3.15.9, 3.15.10
 locking devices **C/AS2** 3.15.2, **C/AS3** 3.15.2,
C/AS4 3.15.2, **C/AS5** 3.15.2, **C/AS6** 3.15.2
 panic fastenings **C/AS4** 3.15.12, 3.15.13, **C/AS6** 3.15.12, 3.15.13
 revolving doors **C/AS2** 3.15.7, 3.15.8, Figure 3.24,
C/AS3 3.15.7, 3.15.8, Figure 3.24,
C/AS4 3.15.7, 3.15.8, Figure 3.24,
C/AS5 3.15.7, 3.15.8, Figure 3.24,
C/AS6 3.15.7, 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
 simple fastenings **C/AS2** 3.15.14, **C/AS3** 3.15.14,
C/AS4 3.15.14, **C/AS5** 3.15.14, **C/AS6** 3.15.14
 vision panels **C/AS2** 3.15.6, **C/AS3** 3.15.6,
C/AS4 3.15.6, **C/AS5** 3.15.6, **C/AS6** 3.15.6
 escape through adjoining building **C/AS2** 3.4.6, Figure 3.10,
C/AS3 3.4.6, Figure 3.10, **C/AS4** 3.4.6, Figure 3.10,
C/AS5 3.4.6, Figure 3.10, **C/AS6** 3.4.6, Figure 3.10
 escape from basements **C/AS2** 3.5, **C/AS3** 3.5, **C/AS4** 3.5, **C/AS5** 3.5, **C/AS6** 3.5
 single escape routes **C/AS2** 3.5.2, Figure 3.11,
C/AS4 3.5.2, Figure 3.11, **C/AS5** 3.5.2, Figure 3.11

<i>Escape routes (continued)</i>	
exitways	see Exitways
external escape routes.....	C/AS2 3.11, Figure 3.18, C/AS3 3.11, C/AS4 3.11, Figure 3.18, C/AS5 3.11, Figure 3.18, C/AS6 3.11, Figure 3.18
balconies or bridges	C/AS2 3.11.6, Figure 3.19, C/AS3 3.11.6, Figure 3.19, C/AS4 3.11.6, Figure 3.19, C/AS5 3.11.6, Figure 3.19, C/AS6 3.11.6, Figure 3.19
ventilation openings	C/AS2 3.11.7, C/AS3 3.11.7, C/AS4 3.11.7, C/AS5 3.11.7, C/AS6 3.11.7
barriers.....	C/AS2 3.11.8, C/AS3 3.11.8, C/AS4 3.11.8, C/AS5 3.11.8, C/AS6 3.11.8
open air auditoriums.....	C/AS4 3.11.9, 3.11.10
separation by distance	C/AS2 3.11.2, 3.11.4, 3.11.5, C/AS3 3.11.2, 3.11.4, 3.11.5, C/AS4 3.11.2, 3.11.4, 3.11.5, C/AS5 3.11.2, 3.11.4, 3.11.5, C/AS6 3.11.2, 3.11.3, 3.11.4, 3.11.5
separation by fire rated construction	C/AS2 3.11.6, C/AS3 3.11.6, C/AS4 3.11.6, C/AS5 3.11.6, C/AS6 3.11.6
final exits	C/AS4 3.12, C/AS5 3.12, C/AS6 3.12, F6/AS1 4.1.1 a), b), 4.2.3 a)
separation.....	C/AS4 3.12.1, C/AS5 3.12.1, C/AS6 3.12.1
height and width.....	C/AS1 3.3, C/AS2 3.3, C/AS3 3.3, C/AS4 3.3, C/AS5 3.3, C/AS6 3.3
curved and spiral stairs.....	C/AS2 3.3.5, C/AS3 3.3.5, C/AS4 3.3.5, C/AS5 3.3.5, C/AS6 3.3.5
handrails and limitation to stairway widths.....	C/AS2 3.3.3, 3.3.4, Figure 3.6, C/AS3 3.3.3, 3.3.4, Figure 3.6, C/AS4 3.3.3, 3.3.4, Figure 3.6, C/AS5 3.3.3, 3.3.4, Figure 3.6, C/AS6 3.3.3, 3.3.4, Figure 3.6
height.....	C/AS2 3.3.1, C/AS3 3.3.1, C/AS4 3.3.1, C/AS5 3.3.1, C/AS6 3.3.1
obstructions.....	C/AS2 3.3.6, C/AS3 3.3.6, C/AS4 3.3.6, C/AS5 3.3.6, C/AS6 3.3.6
width.....	C/AS2 3.3.2, Figures 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, C/AS3 3.3.2, Figures 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, C/AS4 3.3.2, Figures 3.4, 3.5, C/AS5 3.3.2, Figures 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, C/AS6 3.3.2, Figures 3.3, 3.4, 3.5
length	C/AS1 3.4, Table 3.2, C/AS2 3.4, C/AS3 3.4, C/AS4 3.4, C/AS5 3.4, C/AS6 3.4, C/AS7 3.4, Table 3.2
intermediate floors	C/AS2 3.4.3, Figure 3.8, C/AS3 3.4.3, Figure 3.8, C/AS4 3.4.3, Figure 3.8, C/AS5 3.4.3, Figure 3.8, C/AS6 3.4.3, Figure 3.8
open paths.....	C/AS2 3.4.2, Figure 3.7, Table 3.2, C/AS3 3.4.2, Figure 3.7, Table 3.2, C/AS4 3.4.2, Figure 3.7, Table 3.2, C/AS5 3.4.2, Figure 3.7, Table 3.2, C/AS6 3.4.2, Figure 3.7, Table 3.2
sloping floors and ceilings.....	C/AS2 3.4.5, C/AS3 , C/AS4 3.4.5, C/AS5 3.4.5, C/AS6 3.4.5
stairs and ladders	C/AS2 3.4.4, Figure 3.9, C/AS3 3.4.4, Figure 3.9, C/AS4 3.4.4, Figure 3.9, C/AS5 3.4.4, Figure 3.9, C/AS6 3.4.4, Figure 3.9
measurement of travel distance	F6/AS1 Appendix D
number of escape routes	C/AS1 3.2, C/AS2 3.2, Figure 3.2, Table 3.1, C/AS3 3.2, Table 3.1, C/AS4 3.2, Figure 3.2, Table 3.1, C/AS5 3.2, Figure 3.2, Table 3.1, C/AS6 3.2, Figure 3.2, Table 3.1
open paths.....	see Open paths
safe paths.....	see Safe paths
signs	C/AS2 3.16, C/AS3 3.16, C/AS4 3.16, C/AS5 3.16, C/AS6 3.16
single escape routes	C/AS2 3.13, C/AS4 3.13, C/AS5 3.13, C/AS6 3.13
balconies, bridges and external stairways	C/AS2 3.13.3, Figure 20
split level exitway	C/AS2 3.13.4, 3.13.5
width	see Height and width

F

Factories
see Industrial buildings

Falsework
see **Structure**

Farm buildings
see Buildings, farm buildings

Fascias
see Gutters, barges and fascias

Fibre cement sheet **E2/AS1** 9.3.6.2, 9.7
decorative attachments **E2/AS1** 9.7.8
flush-finished systems **E2/AS1** 9.7.4, Figures 111-114
control joints **E2/AS1** 9.7.4.1, Table 19, Figure 111
finishes **E2/AS1** 9.7.4.2
jointed systems **E2/AS1** 9.7.3, Figures 104A-108
paint finish **E2/AS1** 9.7.3.1
limitations **E2/AS1** 9.7.1
material and installation **E2/AS3** 9.7.2
installation **E2/AS1** 9.7.2 1, Tables 23 and 24
parapets and enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.7.7
flush-finished topped balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.7.7.1, Figure 117
soffit details **E2/AS1** 9.7.5, Figures 8A and 114
windows and doors **E2/AS1** 9.7.6, Figures 115 and 116

Fibre cement weatherboards **E2/AS1** 9.5
installation **E2/AS1** 9.5.3, Table 23
external corners **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.3, Figure 88
fixings **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.1, Table 24
internal corners **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.4, Figure 89
laps and joints **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.2, Figure 87
limitations **E2/AS1** 9.5.1
material performance **E2/AS1** 9.5.2
parapets and enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.5.5
protective coating **E2/AS1** 9.5.6
windows and doors **E2/AS1** 9.5.4
windows – direct fixed **E2/AS1** 9.5.4.1, Figures 17D and 90
windows – on cavity **E2/AS1** 9.5.4.2, Figures 17C and 91

Filters
see Strainers

Final exits see Escape routes

Fire alarm systems **F7/AS1** 1.1
descriptions of alarm systems **F7/AS1** 1.2, 3.0
Type 1 – Domestic smoke alarm system **F7/AS1** 1.2.1
Type 2 – Manual fire alarm system **F7/AS1** 1.2.2
Type 3 – Automatic fire alarm system activated **F7/AS1** 1.2.3
by heat detectors and manual call points
Type 4 – Automatic fire alarm system activated **F7/AS1** 1.2.4
by smoke detectors and manual call points
Type 5 – Automatic fire alarm system with **F7/AS1** 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.2.7
modified smoke detection and manual call points
Type 6 – Automatic fire sprinkler system with **F7/AS1** 1.2.8
manual call points
Type 7 – Automatic fire sprinkler system with **F7/AS1** 1.2.3
smoke detectors and manual call points
location of heat and smoke detectors **F7/AS1** 1.3
requirements **F7/AS1** 2.1
alerting the Fire Service **F7/AS1** 2.2, 2.2.2, 2.2.3

- Firecells **C/AS1** Part 2, **C/AS2** Part 2, 4.1, **C/AS3** Part 2, 4.1
C/AS4 Part 2, 4.1, **C/AS5** Part 2, 4.1,
C/AS6 Part 2, 4.1, **C/AS7** 4.1, Figure 4.18
- cross ventilation **C/AS7** 4.1.2, Figure 4.18
- firecell construction..... **C/AS2** 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 4.5.4,
C/AS3 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 4.5.4, **C/AS4** 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 4.5.4,
C/AS5 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 4.5.4, **C/AS6** 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 4.5.4
- ceiling space firecells **C/AS2** 4.5.8, **C/AS3** 4.5.8,
C/AS4 4.5.8, **C/AS5** 4.5.8, **C/AS6** 4.5.8
- junctions of fire separations..... **C/AS2** 4.5.5, 4.5.6, Figures 4.2 and 4.3,
C/AS3 4.5.5, 4.5.6, Figures 4.2 and 4.3,
C/AS4 4.5.5, 4.5.6, Figures 4.2 and 4.3,
C/AS5 4.5.5, 4.5.6, Figures 4.2 and 4.3, **C/AS6**
- junctions with roof..... **C/AS2** 4.5.7, **C/AS3** 4.5.7,
C/AS4 4.5.7, **C/AS5** 4.5.7, **C/AS6** 4.5.7
- sealing of gaps..... **C/AS2** 4.5.9, 4.5.10, **C/AS3** 4.5.9, 4.5.10,
C/AS4 4.5.9, 4.5.10, **C/AS5** 4.5.9, 4.5.10, **C/AS6** 4.5.9, 4.5.10
- fire safety systems..... **C/AS2** 2.2, Table 2.1, Figure 2.1,
C/AS3 2.2, Table 2.1, Figure 2.1, **C/AS4** 2.2, Table 2.1, Figure 2.1,
C/AS5 2.2, Table 2.1, Figure 2.1, **C/AS6** 2.2, Table 2.1, Figure 2.1
- early childhood centres **C/AS4** 2.2.2
- floor with more than one risk group..... **C/AS2** 2.2.4, 2.2.5, 2.2.6,
C/AS3 2.2.4, 2.2.5, 2.2.6, **C/AS4** 2.2.4, 2.2.5, 2.2.6,
C/AS5 2.2.4, 2.2.5, 2.2.6, **C/AS6** 2.2.4, 2.2.5, 2.2.6
- other floors in a building..... **C/AS2** 2.2.7, **C/AS3** 2.2.7,
C/AS4 2.2.7, **C/AS5** 2.2.7, **C/AS6** 2.2.7
- same risk group on different floors **C/AS2** 2.2.8, **C/AS3** 2.2.8,
C/AS4 2.2.8, **C/AS5** 2.2.8, **C/AS6** 2.2.8
- floor area limits..... **C/AS2** 2.1.1, **C/AS3** 2.1.1,
C/AS4 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.1.3, **C/AS5** 2.2.7, **C/AS6** 2.1.1
- passing into an adjacent firecell..... **C/AS2** 3.7.13, Figure 3.15,
C/AS5 3.7.13, Figure 3.15, **C/AS6** 3.7.13, Figure 3.15
- provision **C/AS1** 2.1, **C/AS2** 2.1, **C/AS3** 2.1,
C/AS4 2.1, **C/AS5** 2.1, **C/AS6** 2.1
- firecell floor area limits **C/AS1** 2.1.1
- risk group CA **C/AS5** 2.1.3
- Fire engineering design **F7/AS1** 1.1.7, 1.4.1
- Fire fighting **C/AS1** Part 6, **C/AS2** Part 6, **C/AS3** Part 6,
C/AS4 Part 6, **C/AS5** Part 6, **C/AS6** Part 6
- access for firefighting and rescue operations **C/AS2** 6.3, **C/AS3** 6.3, **C/AS4** 6.3,
C/AS5 6.3, **C/AS6** 6.3
- firefighting facilities..... **C/AS2** 6.3, **C/AS3** 6.4,
C/AS4 6.4, **C/AS5** 6.3, **C/AS6** 6.4
- fire hydrant system..... **C/AS2** 6.4.1, 6.4.2, **C/AS3** 6.4.1, 6.4.2,
C/AS4 6.4.1, 6.4.2, **C/AS5** 6.4.1, 6.4.2, **C/AS6**
- Fire Service lift control **C/AS2** 6.4.3, **C/AS3** 6.4.3, **C/AS4** 6.4.3,
C/AS5 6.4.3, **C/AS6** 6.4.1, 6.4.2
- Fire Service vehicular access..... **C/AS1** 6.1, **C/AS2** 6.1, **C/AS3** 6.1,
C/AS4 6.1, **C/AS5** 6.1, **C/AS6** 6.1
- information for firefighters..... **C/AS2** 6.2, **C/AS3** 6.2, **C/AS4** 6.2,
C/AS5 6.2, **C/AS6** 6.2, **C/AS1** 8.2
- Fire resistance ratings **C/AS1** Part 2, 2.3, 5.1, **C/AS2** Part 2, 2.3, 2.3.1, 2.3.2, 2.3.3,
C/AS3 Part 2, 2.3, 2.3.1, 2.3.3, **C/AS4** Part 2, 2.3, 2.3.1, 2.3.2, 2.3.3,
C/AS5 Part 2, 2.3, 2.3.1, 2.3.2, 2.3.3, **C/AS6** Part 2, 2.3, 2.3.1, 2.3.3,
C/AS7 Part 2, 2.3
- insulation component..... **C/AS2** 2.3.12, 2.3.13, **C/AS3** 2.3.13,
C/AS4 2.3.12, 2.3.13, **C/AS5** 2.3.12, 2.3.13, **C/AS6** 2.3.13
- general requirements **C/AS2** 2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6, 2.3.7, 2.3.8, 2.3.9, 2.3.10, 2.3.11,
C/AS3 2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6, 2.3.7, 2.3.8, 2.3.9, 2.3.10, 2.3.11,
C/AS4 2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6, 2.3.7, 2.3.8, 2.3.9, 2.3.10, 2.3.11,
C/AS5 2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6, 2.3.7, 2.3.8, 2.3.9, 2.3.10, 2.3.11,
C/AS6 2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6, 2.3.7, 2.3.8, 2.3.9, 2.3.10, 2.3.11

- Fire resisting closures see Control of internal fire and smoke spread
- Fire Safety see **Protection from Fire**
- Fire safety systems **C/AS1** Part 2, 2.2, Table 2.1, Appendix A,
C/AS2 Part 2, 2.2, Table 2.1, Figure 2.1, Appendix A,
C/AS3 Part 2, 2.2, Table 2.1, Figure 2.1, Appendix A,
C/AS4 Part 2, 2.2, Table 2.1, Figure 2.1, Appendix A,
C/AS5 Part 2, 2.2, Table 2.1, Figure 2.1, Appendix A,
C/AS6 Part 2, 2.2, Table 2.1, Appendix A,
C/AS7 Part 2, 2.0, Table 2.1
- early childhood centres **C/AS4** 2.2.2
- fire alarm and sprinkler systems **C/AS1** A1.1.1, **C/AS2** A1.1.1,
C/AS3 A1.1.1, **C/AS4** A1.1.1, **C/AS5** A1.1.1, **C/AS6** A1.1.1
- fire safety system descriptions..... **C/AS1** A2.1, **C/AS2** A2.1, **C/AS3** A2.1,
C/AS4 A2.1, **C/AS5** A2.1, **C/AS6** A2.1
- floor with more than one risk group..... **C/AS2** 2.2.4, 2.2.5, 2.2.6,
C/AS3 2.2.4, 2.2.5, 2.2.6, **C/AS4** 2.2.4, 2.2.5, 2.2.6,
C/AS5 2.2.4, 2.2.5, 2.2.6, **C/AS6** 2.2.4, 2.2.5, 2.2.6
- other floors in a building..... **C/AS2** 2.2.7, **C/AS3** 2.2.7, **C/AS4** 2.2.7,
C/AS5 2.2.7, **C/AS6** 2.2.7
- same risk group on different floors..... **C/AS2** 2.2.8, **C/AS3** 2.2.8,
C/AS4 2.2.8, **C/AS5** 2.2.8, **C/AS6** 2.2.8
- requirements common to alarm systems **C/AS1** A1.2, **C/AS2** A1.2, **C/AS3**,
C/AS4 A1.2, **C/AS6** A1.2, **C/AS6** A1.2
- Fire Service see Firefighting
- Fire spread see Control of external fire spread , Control of internal fire and smoke spread
- Fire sprinkler systems **C/AS1** Appendix B, **C/AS2** Appendix B,
C/AS3 Appendix B, **C/AS4** Appendix B **C/AS5** Appendix B,
C/AS6 Appendix B
- automatic fire sprinkler systems..... **C/AS1** B2.1, **C/AS2** B2.1 **C/AS3** B2.1,
C/AS4 B2.1, **C/AS5** B2.1, **C/AS6** B2.1
- introduction **C/AS1** B1.1, **C/AS2** B1.1, **C/AS3** B1.1,
C/AS4 B1.1, **C/AS5** B1.1, **C/AS6** B1.1
- residential fire sprinkler systems **C/AS1** B3.1, **C/AS2** B3.1,
C/AS3 B3.1, **C/AS4** B3.1, **C/AS5** B3.1, **C/AS6** B3.1
- Fire stopping see Control of internal fire and smoke spread
- Fireplace..... see Prevention of fire occurring
- Fixings **E2/AS1** 4.4, 8.1.4, 8.2.4, 8.3.7, 8.4.8, 8.4.8.1, 8.4.9, 8.4.9.1, 9.4.3.1,
9.4.4.3, 9.4.5.2, 9.5.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.7.3.1, 9.8.3.1, 9.9.4.1,
Tables 14, 15, 20-22, 24, Figures 39 and 40
- Fixtures
- sanitary fixtures
see **Personal Hygiene**
- Flammable liquids
see **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 3 flammable liquids
- Flammable solids
see **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 4 flammable solids

- Flashings **E2/AS1** 4.0, 8.2.4, 8.2.6, 8.3.8, 8.4.11, 8.4.11.1, 8.4.12, 9.2.4, 9.6.7,
Tables 20-22, Figures 5 and 6
apron flashings **E2/AS1** 5.1, 8.4.12 b), Figures 7, 35 and 44
- fixings **E2/AS1** 4.4, Tables 20-22
head flashings **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.4, Table 7
jamb flashings **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.6
materials **E2/AS1** 4.1, 4.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.3, 9.8.5, Tables 20-22
aluminium **E2/AS1** 4.3.2
aluminium-zinc coated steel **E2/AS1** 4.3.4
bituminous **E2/AS1** 4.3.10
butyl rubber **E2/AS1** 4.3.9
copper **E2/AS1** 4.3.6
EPDM **E2/AS1** 4.3.9
flexible flashing tape **E2/AS1** 4.3.11
galvanised steel **E2/AS1** 4.3.3
lead sheet **E2/AS1** 4.3.7
stainless steel **E2/AS1** 4.3.5
uPVC **E2/AS1** 4.3.1
zinc sheet **E2/AS1** 4.3.8
overlaps and upstands **E2/AS1** 4.6, Table 7
overlap with roof claddings **E2/AS1** 4.6.1
apron flashing cover over metal roofing **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.1
barges **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.5, Figure 47, Table 7
change in metal roof pitches **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.3, Figure 44, Table 7
inter-storey junctions **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.7, Figure 70, Table 7
parallel flashing **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.1, Figures 47 and 48
ridges and hips **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.2, Figure 46, Table 7
roof- or deck-to-wall junctions **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.4, Figure 7, Table 7
transverse flashing **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.1, Figure 7, Table 7
window and door heads **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.6, Figures 71 and 81, Table 7
requirements **E2/AS1** 4.5
edge treatments **E2/AS1** 4.5.1, Figure 5
metal flashing joints **E2/AS1** 4.5.2, Figure 6
- Flats
see Housing, multi-unit dwelling
- Flooding
flood risk assessment **E1/VM1** 3.2.2
history of **E1/AS1** 1.0.1
protection from **E1/VM1** 3.2.2
- Floors **NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), D1.3.3 (e), D1.3.4 (c), E2.3.3, E2.3.4, G6.3.1, G6.3.2;**
F7/AS1 1.1.2; **G3/AS1** 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3,
2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6
see also Control of internal fire and smoke spread
floor/ceiling assemblies **G6/AS1** 1.0.3, Figure 3
floor/wall junctions **G6/AS1** 1.0.3, Figure 5
minimum floor level **E1/AS1** 2.0, Figures 1 and 2
moisture **NZBC/E2.3.4**
slip resistant **NZBC/D1.3.3 (d); G15/AS1** 3.0.2
- Floor outlets **G13/AS1** 3.4
- Floor wastes **E3/AS1** 2.0.1, 2.2, Figure 4
- Flues **NZBC/G11.3.3; G4/AS1** 2.3, 2.4; **G11/AS1** 5.0
fire damper **G11/AS1** 5.3
gas burning appliances see Prevention of fire occurring
locations on dwellings **G4/AS1** 2.4
materials **G11/AS1** 5.1
oil fired appliances see Prevention of fire occurring
safety devices **G11/AS1** 5.2
solid fuel appliances see Prevention of fire occurring

Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination	G3
cooking	NZBC/G3.3.1 (c); G3/AS1 1.2.1, 1.4.1
energy supply	NZBC/G3.3.3
location	NZBC/G3.3.4
people with disabilities	NZBC/G3.3.5
preparation	NZBC/G3.3.1 (b) (d), G3.3.2
prevention of contamination	NZBC/G3.3.6
rinsing	G3/AS1 1.1.1
storage	NZBC/G3.3.1 (a); G3/AS1 1.3.1
refrigeration	G3/AS1 1.3.2, 1.4.1
ventilation	G3/AS1 1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.3.4
surfaces	G3/AS1 1.1.2, 1.1.3, Figure 1
utensil washing	NZBC/G3.3.1 (b), G3.3.2
Foul Water	G13
<i>see also</i> Discharge pipes, Drains, Sanitary appliances, Sanitary fixtures, Vent pipes, Water seals, Water traps	
gravity flow	NZBC/G13.3.1 (a), G13.3.2 (a)
odours	NZBC/G13.1 (b), G13.3.1 (c), G13.3.2 (e); G13/AS1 3.1.1
offensive matter	NZBC/G13.1 (b)
on-site disposal systems	NZBC/G13.3.4
<i>see also</i> Industrial Liquid Waste	
outfalls	NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.2
personal hygiene	NZBC/G13.1 (a)
plumbing system	NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.1
sewer	NZBC/G13.3.3, G13.3.4, G15.3.3
three storey buildings	G13/AS1 Figure 7
Foundations	B1/VM4
<i>see also</i> Chimneys, foundations	
design parameters	
continuous vibration	B1/VM4 1.0.6
depth	B1/VM4 2.0.4
ground stability	B1/VM4 1.0.4
long-term loading	B1/VM4 2.0.6
short-term loading	B1/VM4 2.0.6
serviceability deformations	B1/VM4 1.0.3, Appendix B
pile foundations	B1/VM4 4.0
belled piles	B1/VM4 4.0.3 b), 5.1.2
bulbed piles	B1/VM4 4.0.3 c)
concrete piles	
cast-in-situ	B1/VM4 3.4.4
precast	B1/VM4 3.4.4, 5.1.1
downdrag	B1/VM4 4.5
nominal width	B1/VM4 4.0.3, 4.2.2, 4.6.1
notation	B1/VM4 4.1.1, Table 2
pile driving	B1/VM4 5.1.1
pile driving formula	B1/VM4 4.0.1
pile groups	
design pile lateral strength	B1/VM4 4.0.4
design pile vertical strength	B1/VM4 4.0.4
ultimate lateral strength	B1/VM4 4.6.1, Table 3
ultimate vertical strength	B1/VM4 4.4.1
single piles	
base resistance	B1/VM4 4.1.3, Figures 3 and 4
column action	B1/VM4 4.2
design pile lateral strength	B1/VM4 4.0.4
design pile vertical strength	B1/VM4 4.0.4
lateral strength	B1/VM4 4.3
drained cohesionless soil	B1/VM4 4.3.4
free head pile	B1/VM4 4.3.2 a), 4.3.3 a), 4.3.4 a)
restrained head pile	B1/VM4 4.3.2 b), 4.3.3 b), 4.3.4 b)
undrained cohesive soil	B1/VM4 4.3.2
undrained consolidated soil	B1/VM4 4.3.3
shaft resistance	B1/VM4 4.1.4, Figure 5, Table 2
ultimate axial compression	B1/VM4 4.0.1 to 4.0.3
vertical strength	B1/VM4 4.1.2

Foundations (continued)

strength reduction factors.....	B1/VM4 4.7, Table 4
types	
concrete.....	B1/VM4 5.1.1, 5.1.2
steel.....	B1/VM4 5.2.1, 5.2.2
timber.....	B1/VM4 5.3
shallow foundations.....	B1/VM4 3.0
concrete slab-on-ground.....	B1/AS1 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, B1/AS3 1.3
design bearing pressure.....	B1/VM4 3.2.1, 3.2.4
design bearing strength.....	B1/VM4 3.2.3
design sliding resistance.....	B1/VM4 3.4.6
local shear.....	B1/VM4 3.3.3
moment loading.....	B1/VM4 3.1.4
notation.....	B1/VM4 3.3.1, Figures 1 and 2
soils.....	B1/VM4 3.1.2, 3.4.3
strength reduction factors.....	B1/VM4 3.5,
surcharge.....	B1/VM4 3.1.3
ultimate bearing strength.....	B1/VM4 3.1.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
ultimate sliding resistance.....	B1/VM4 3.4.2
ultimate sliding strength.....	B1/VM4 3.4.4, 3.4.5
<i>see also</i> Chimneys, foundations	

G

- Garages
see Outbuildings
- Gas **G3/AS1** 1.4.1
- Gas as an Energy Source** **G11**
- automatic cut-offs **NZBC/G11.3.2**
 - flued appliances **NZBC/G11.3.3**
 - gas supply authority **NZBC/G11.3.6**
 - isolation devices **NZBC/G11.3.4**
 - meters **NZBC G11.3.6**
 - location **G11/AS1** 8.0
 - over pressure protection **G11/AS1** 3.0
 - safe pressure ranges **NZBC/G11.3.1**
 - service risers **NZBC/G11.3.6**
 - supply system **NZBC/G11.2, G11.3.1, G11.3.5**
- Gas burning appliances *see* Prevention of fire occurring
- Gases
see **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 2 gases
- Gas fuel appliances **G4/AS1** 2.0, 3.0
- Gas reticulation
- another Acceptable Solution **G10/AS1** 5.0
 - cleaning **G10/AS1** 1.1
 - tailpipes **G10/AS1** 1.1.3
 - concealed piping **G10/AS1** 1.4
 - in concrete **G10/AS1** 1.4.1
 - in enclosed spaces **G10/AS1** 1.4.2
 - underground **G10/AS1** 1.4.3, Table 3
 - construction **G10/AS1** 1.0
 - corrosion control **G10/AS1** 3.0
 - design **G10/AS1** 1.0.1 a)
 - installation **G10/AS1** 1.2
 - bends and offsets **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 d)
 - risers **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 c)
 - separation **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 b)
 - supports **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 a), Table 2
 - isolating valves **G10/AS1** 2.0
 - materials **G10/AS1** 1.0.1 b), Table 1
 - pipework in ducts **G10/AS1** 1.5
 - unventilated ducts **G10/AS1** 1.5.4
 - ventilated ducts **G10/AS1** 1.5.3
 - vent lines **G10/AS1** 4.0, Tables 4 and 5
 - welded joints **G10/AS1** 1.3
- Geology **B1/VM4** A1.2.1 a)
- Glazing **NZBC/F2.3.3; B1/AS1 7.0; C/AS1** 5.8, 6.19.11
see also **Hazardous Building Materials, Control of external fire spread, Control of internal fire and smoke spread**
 human impact safety **F2/AS1** 1.1
 modifications to NZS 4223 **F2/AS1** 1.2
- Government agencies **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)**
see also Commercial buildings
- Government offices **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)**
see also Commercial buildings
- Grease traps **G13/AS2** 3.4
 capacity **G13/AS2** 3.4.3, 3.4.4
- Ground
 good ground **B1/AS2** 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, **B1/AS3** 1.3.2

- Ground conditions..... **B1/VM4** 1.0.2, Appendix A
- Groundwater **B1/VM4** 1.0.2, Appendices A, B; **G14/VM1** 1.6.1
 conditions **B1/VM4** 1.0.2
 seasonal changes **B1/VM4** A1.2.1
 tidal changes **B1/VM4** A1.2.1
- Gully traps **G13/AS1** Figures 5 and 7, **G13/AS2** 3.3, Figures 2 and 3
 construction **G13/AS2** 3.3.1, Figure 4
 overflow relief **G13/AS2** 3.3.2
 pipe diameters..... **G13/AS2** 3.3.1
- Gutters **E1/AS1** 5.0
 gradients..... **E1/AS1** 5.3
 materials **E1/AS1** 5.2, Table 6
 overflow outlets **E1/AS1** 5.5
 sizing..... **E1/AS1** 5.1, Figures 15 and 16
 thermal movement..... **E1/AS1** 5.4, Table 7
- Gutters, barges, and fascias **E2/AS1** 5.2, 8.1.6, 8.3.9, 8.4.14, 8.5.10, Figures 20 and 64
 internal gutters **E2/AS1** 8.1.6.1, 8.4.16, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52
 parallel hidden gutters..... **E2/AS1** 8.1.6.2, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
 valley gutters **E2/AS1** 8.1.6.2, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figures 37 and 51

H

- Habitable spaces.....**NZBC/E3.3.1, G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.3, G6.2, G7.2; G6/AS1** 1.0.2
- Halls
 see Communal non-residential
- Halls of residence
 see Communal residential
- Handicapped people
 see People with disabilities
- HandrailsNZBC/D1.3.3 (j) (k), D1.3.4 (i);
 D1/AS1 1.5.2, 1.5.4 b), 1.6.1, 1.7, 5.2.1 g), 6.0, 6.0.1,
 6.0.2, Figures 6 and 19
- see also* Escape routes
- clearances**D1/AS1** 6.0.7, Figure 26
- handrail profiles**D1/AS1** 6.0.7 to 6.0.9, Figure 26
- height.....**D1/AS1** 6.0.6, Figure 25
- horizontal extensions **D1/AS1** 6.0.4, 6.0.5, Figure 25
- intermediate handrails..... **D1/AS1** 6.0.2
- relevant width.....**D1/AS1** 6.0.9, Figure 26
- slope..... **D1/AS1** 6.0.4
- Hazards to building elements **F1/VM1** 2.7
- Hazardous Agents on Site**..... **F1**
- see also* Site investigation
- assessment of sites **NZBC/F1.3.1**
- contaminants..... **F1/VM1** 1.0.2 c), 2.1.2, 2.2.1 g), 2.2.2, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.6.2
 2.6.3, Table 2
- degradation of building materials **F1/VM1** 2.7
- likely effects on people **NZBC/F1.3.2**
- hazardous agents **F1/VM1** 1.0.2 c), 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.5.5, Table 2
- network utility operators.....**F1/VM1** 2.1.1 f)
- remedial work.....**F1/VM1** 2.6, Table 3
- risk assessment**F1/VM1** 1.0.2 c), 2.5, 2.5.4
- Hazardous Building Materials** **F2**
- see also* Glazing
- asbestos **F2/AS1** 2.0
- brittle materials **NZBC/F2.3.3**
- harmful concentrations **NZBC/F2.3.1**
- transparent panels..... **NZBC/F2.3.2**
- Hazard category
 see Fire hazard categories
- Hazardous Substances and Processes**..... **F3**
- Class 1 **F3/VM1** 3.1
- Class 2 **F3/VM1** 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4.1
- Class 3.1 **F3/VM1** 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4.1
- Class 4 **F3/VM1** 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.4.1
- Class 5 **F3/VM1** 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.4.1
- control of adverse effects of ignition **F3/VM1** 3.1
- control of ignition **F3/VM1** 3.1
- isolation distances..... **F3/VM1** 3.2
- methods of construction..... **F3/VM1** 3.2
- other legislation..... **F3/VM1** 1.0
- scope **F3/VM1** 2.0
- secondary containment systems..... **F3/VM1** 3.3
- security..... **F3/VM1** 3.4
- explosions **NZBC/F3.3 (c)**
- food preparation and utensil washing areas **NZBC/G3.3.2 (b)**
- hazardous substances associated
 with building services..... **NZBC/G10.1, G10.2**
- protected ignition sources **NZBC/F3.3 (d)**
- release of pressure..... **NZBC/F3.3 (c)**
- released during fire **NZBC/C3.2 (d), C3.3.10**
- rendering hazardous materials harmless **NZBC/F3.3 (e)**

- Hazardous Substances and Processes** (continued).....
- sewers and public drains..... **NZBC/F3.3 (b)**
 - signs **NZBC/F3.3 (g)**
 - surface finishes **NZBC/F3.3 (f)**
 - unauthorised access **NZBC/F3.3 (a)**
- Hazardous wastes..... **G14/VM1** 1.4.1 b), 1.9.1, 2.1.4, 2.2.1 b),
2.2.4, 2.3.6, 2.4.4, 3.3
- Health camps
see Communal residential
- Hearths..... **B1/AS3** 1.4, 2.2, 2.2.1 to 2.2.3
hearth slabs..... **B1/AS3** 2.2, 2.2.1 to 2.2.3
- Heat detectors
see Fire safety precautions
- Heating
see **Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment**
- Height
see Building height or Escape height
- Height clearances **D1/AS1** 1.4, 1.4.1, Figure 3, Table 1
- Hobs **G3/AS1** 1.2.1
- Hospitals **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv); G1/AS1** Table 4
see also Communal residential
- Hostels
see Communal residential
- Hot dip galvanising **B1/AS3** 1.8.6
- Hot plates **G3/AS1** 1.2.1
- Hot water supply
see Water supplies, hot
- Hotels **D1/AS1** 9.1.1
see also Communal residential
- Housing **NZBC/A1 2.0, D1.3.3, E1.3.2, G1.3.5, G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d),
G3.3.2 (c), G7.2, G12.3.4, G12.3.9, H1.3.2; F4/AS1** Table 1;
G3/AS1 1.0.1; **G9/AS1** 1.0; **H1/VM1** 1.0, 1.2, **H1/AS1** 1.0, 2.0
detached dwellings **NZBC/A1 2.0.2, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, D1.3.2 (i), F6.2, F7.3,
F8.2, G15.2; H1/VM1** 1.2
group dwellings **NZBC/A1 2.0.4, G8.2; H1/VM1** 1.1.2
multi-unit dwellings **NZBC/A1 2.0.3, C3.3.2, D1.3.2 (i), F6.2, F8.2,
G8.2, G15.2; H1/VM1** 1.1, 1.2, **H1/AS1** 2.1.2
- HVAC systems **F7/AS1** 1.5.3

I

- Identification of non-potable water supply **G12/AS1** 4.2.1
see also **Water supplies**
- Illuminance **G7/VM1** 1.0; **G8/VM1** 1.0, **G8/AS1** 1.0
 measurement **G8/VM1** 1.0.1
 minimum **G8/AS1** 1.0.3
- Impact insulation class (IIC) **G6/VM1** 2.0
- In-service history **B2/VM1** 1.1
- Industrial buildings **NZBC/A1 6.0, D1.3.2 (h), D1.3.3, E3.3.1, G1.3.5, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) (b), G3.3.2 (b), G3.3.6, G8.2, G9.3.4, G12.3.9, H1.2 (a); G1/AS1** Table 1; **G3/AS1** 2.0.1; **H1/AS1** 1.0.2
- Industrial Liquid Waste** **G14**
- capacity **NZBC/G14.3.2 (a)**
- collection **G14/VM1** 1.1.1, 1.4
 location of facilities **G14/VM1** 1.4
- contamination of potable water **NZBC/G14.3.2 (c)**
- conveyance systems **G14/VM1** 2.0
 drainage **G14/VM1** 2.2
 piping systems **G14/VM1** 2.3, Table 3
 pumps **G14/VM1** 2.4, Figure 2
- corrosion **G14/VM1** 1.5.1, 1.5.2
- disposal **G14/VM1** 1.1.1, Table 1, Figure 1
 location of facilities **G14/VM1** 1.4
 to a natural waterway **G14/VM1** 1.2.1 b)
 to a sewer **G14/VM1** 1.2.1 a), **G14/AS1** 1.2.1, 1.2.2
- disposal systems **NZBC/G14.3.1**
- hazardous wastes
 see Hazardous wastes
- industry types **G14/VM1** 1.2.2, Table 1
- materials used in construction **G14/VM1** 1.5.1
- odours **NZBC/G14.3.1 (c), G14.3.2 (f)**
- resource consents **NZBC/G14.3.2 (d)**
- safety facilities **G14/VM1** 3.3.2
- security **G14/VM1** 1.9
- separation of waste **G14/VM1** 1.7.1
- storage **G14/VM1** 1.1.1, 1.2.1 c), 1.4
 containers **NZBC/G14.3.1**
 location of facilities **G14/VM1** 1.4
 tanks
 see Tanks
- treatment **G14/VM1** 1.1.1, 1.2, 1.2.2, 1.4, Figure 1, Table 1
 location of facilities **G14/VM1** 1.4
- unauthorised access **NZBC/G14.3.2 (g)**
- vehicle access **NZBC/G14.3.2 (b)**
- Inspection chambers
see Maintenance access to drains
- Inspection points
see Maintenance access to drains
- Insulation
see Fire resistance ratings
- Integrity
see Fire resistance ratings
- Intellectually handicapped persons
see People with disabilities
- Intended Life
see **Durability**

- Intended use **NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, D1.3.5 (a), E3.3.5, F1.3.2 (a), F3.3 (f), F4.3.2, G2.3.1, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a), G3.3.6, G5.2.1 (b), G9.2, G11.1 (c), G11.2, G12.3.5, G15.2**
- Interior Environment** **G5**
- accessible reception areas **NZBC/G5.3.4**
 - adequate activity space **NZBC/G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b)**
see also Activity space
 - enhanced listening systems **NZBC/G5.3.5, G5.3.6**
 - internal temperature **NZBC/G5.1 (a), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1; G5/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2**
 - unsafe installations **NZBC/G5.1 (c), G5.2.2, G5.3.2**
- Interior lighting
see **Artificial Light** **G8**
- Interior linings **G3/AS1 1.6, 2.2**
- ceilings **G3/AS1 2.1.2, 2.2.3**
 - floors **G3/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3 to 2.3.6**
 - walls **G3/AS1 1.6, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2.3, 2.2.4**
- Interior surfaces **G7/AS1 1.0.2 to 1.0.4, Table 1**
- Intermediate floors
see Floors
- Internal Moisture** **E3**
- concealed spaces **NZBC/E3.3.6; E3/AS1 3.2.2**
 - condensation **E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.1.5, 1.3**
 - condensation channels **E3/AS1 1.3**
 - energy efficiency **E3/AS1 1.1.5**
 - floor surfaces **NZBC/E3.3.3, E3.3.5**
 - free water overflow **NZBC/E3.2 (b), E3.3.2**
 - fungal growth **NZBC/E3.2 (a); E3/AS1 1.0.1**
 - overflow **E3/AS1 2.0**
 - containment **E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.1, Figure 1**
 - floor waste **E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2**
 - people with disabilities **E3/AS1 3.3.2**
 - steel framing **E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)**
 - thermal break **E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)**
 - thermal resistance **NZBC/E3.3.1; E3/AS1 1.1**
 - materials and installation **E3/AS1 1.1.3**
 - ventilation **NZBC/E3.3.1; E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.2**
 - wall surfaces **NZBC/E3.3.4, E3.3.5**
 - watersplash **E3/AS1 3.0**
 - basins **E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3**
 - baths **E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3**
 - joints in linings **E3/AS1 3.2, Figure 2**
 - lining materials **E3/AS1 3.1, Figure 1**
 - showers **E3/AS1 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5**
 - sinks **E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3**
 - tubs **E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3**
 - urinals **E3/AS1 3.3.6**
 - windows **E3/AS1 1.3.1**
- Isolating valves **G12/AS1 3.7.1, 5.4.2**

JKL

J

Jetties
 see Ancillary buildings

K

Kerbs **D1/AS1** 1.5.4 a), Figure 6
 see also Ramps

Kindergartens
 see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential

Kitchens
 see **Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination**

Kitchen sinks **G13/AS1** 3.3.2, Figure 2, Table 2

L

Laboratory testing **B2/VM1** 1.2

Ladders **D1/AS1** 5.0

see also Stairs and ladders

height **D1/AS1** 5.1.2, 5.1.7

individual rung-type ladders **D1/AS1** 5.1.1 c), 5.4, Figure 24

clearance **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 c)

height **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 c)

rungs **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 a)

tread width **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 b)

width **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 b)

landings **D1/AS1** 5.3.2

length **D1/AS1** 5.1.5, 5.1.7

width **D1/AS1** 5.1.4

location **D1/AS1** 5.1.3

rung spacing **D1/AS1** 5.1.6

rung-type ladders **D1/AS1** 5.1.1 b), 5.3, Figure 20

clearances **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 e)

height **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 d)

landings **D1/AS1** 5.3.2, Figure 23

rungs **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 b)

slope **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 a)

width **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 c)

safety enclosures **D1/AS1** 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22

step-type ladders **D1/AS1** 5.1.1 a), 5.2, 5.2.1, Figure 19

clearances **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 e)

height **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 d)

horizontal openings **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 f)

slope **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 a)

treads **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 b)

width **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 c)

types of ladders **D1/AS1** 5.1.1

Landings **NZBC/D1.3.2 (l) (m), D1.3.4 (i)**

Landslip **B1/VM4** A1.2.1 a)

M

- Maintenance **NZBC/B2.3.1, D2.3.1 (f), D2.3.4 (c), E1.3.3 (d), E2/AS1 2.5, G10.3.6, G11.3.4, G12.3.6 (d) (e), G13.3.1 (d), G13.3.2 (d), G14.3.2 (h), G15.3.2 (c);**
 general..... **E2/AS1 2.5**
 normal..... **B2/AS1 2.1**
 regular maintenance..... **E2/AS1 2.5.1**
 scheduled..... **B2/AS1 2.2**
- Maintenance access to drains **G13/AS2 5.7**
 access chambers **E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12; G13/AS2 Figure 12**
 access points..... **E1/AS1 3.7, 3.7.3, 3.7.7, G13/AS2 5.7, Figures 9 to 12**
 inspection chambers..... **E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11; G13/AS2 Figure 11**
 inspection points **E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), G13/AS2 5.7, Figure 9**
 location **G13/AS2 5.7.4**
 rodding points **E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10; G13/AS2 5.7.4 f), Figure 10**
- Marae
 see Housing, group dwellings
- Masonry
 see Design, masonry
 masonry buildings **B1/AS3 1.1.1**
- Masonry tiles **E2/AS1 8.2**
 anti-ponding boards **E2/AS1 8.2.5, Figure 25**
 details and flashings..... **E2/AS1 8.2.6, Figures 23-28, 73D and 73E**
 flashings and fixings..... **E2/AS1 8.2.4, Tables 20-22**
 general..... **E2/AS1 8.2.2**
 installation **E2/AS1 8.2.3, Tables 10, 20 and 23**
 materials..... **E2/AS1 8.2.1**
 tile profiles **E2/AS1 8.2.1.1**
 penetrations **E2/AS1 8.2.7, Figures 29-31**
- Masonry veneer..... **E2/AS1 9.1.3.2, 9.2, Table 18**
 cavities **E2/AS1 9.2.6, Figure 73C**
 control joints..... **E2/AS1 9.2.8, Figure 73A**
 clay bricks **E2/AS1 9.2.8.1, Figure 73A**
 concrete bricks **E2/AS1 9.2.8.2, Figure 73A**
 flashings **E2/AS1 9.2.4**
 foundation support and damp proofing **E2/AS1 9.2.5**
 general..... **E2/AS1 9.2.2**
 installation **E2/AS1 9.2.3, Table 23, Figure 73B**
 limitations..... **E2/AS1 9.2.1**
 openings..... **E2/AS1 9.2.9, Table 18D**
 secondary cladding **E2/AS1 9.2.1**
 wall ties **E2/AS1 9.2.7, Tables 18A-18C**
 windows and doors..... **E2/AS1 9.2.10, Figures 73C and 73D**
- Means of escape **C/AS1 Part 3, C/AS2 Part 3, C/AS3 Part 3, C/AS4 Part 3, C/AS5 Part 3, C/AS6 Part 3, C/AS7 Part 3**
 escape routes..... See Escape routes
 general principles **C/AS2 3.1, Figure 3.1, C/AS3 3.1, Figure 3.1, C/AS4 3.1, Figure 3.1, C/AS5 3.1, Figure 3.1, C/AS6 3.1, Figure 3.1**
- Mechanical Installations for Access** **D2**
 control system..... **NZBC/D2.3.1 (e)**
 emergency conditions..... **NZBC/D2.3.3**
 escalators **NZBC/D1.3.3 (e)**
 lifts..... **NZBC/D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.2 (c), D1.3.4 (c); D1/AS1 12.0**
 lighting..... **NZBC/D2.3.2 (c)**
 loads **NZBC/D2.3.1 (a)**
 location of potentially dangerous equipment **NZBC/D2.3.4**
 people with disabilities..... **NZBC/D2.3.5**
 servicing mechanical installations **NZBC/D2.1 (b)**

- Mechanical ventilation
see **Ventilation**
- Medical consultancy rooms **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)**
see also Communal non-residential
- Membrane cappings** **E2/AS1 6.5**
- Metal cappings** **E2/AS1 6.4, 7.4.4, 9.9.10.2, Figure 9**
- Membrane roofs and decks** **E2/AS1 8.5**
 butyl and EPDM **E2/AS1 8.5.4**
 control joints **E2/AS1 8.5.7**
 general **E2/AS1 8.5.2**
 gutters **E2/AS1 8.5.10, Figure 64**
 installation **E2/AS1 8.5.5**
 butyl and EPDM **E2/AS1 8.5.5.2**
 plywood **E2/AS1 8.5.5.1**
 junctions **E2/AS1 8.5.8, Figures 57, 58 and 61-62**
 with walls **E2/AS1 8.5.8.1, Figure 62**
 limitations **E2/AS1 8.5.1, Figure 17A**
 penetrations **E2/AS1 8.5.9, Figures 59 and 60**
 handrails **E2/AS1 8.5.9.1**
 plywood substrates **E2/AS1 8.5.3**
 roof and deck drainage **E2/AS1 8.5.6, Figures 56-64**
- Mixing devices
see Water supply, hot
- Moisture
see **External Moisture, Internal Moisture, Surface Water**
- Motels **D1/AS1 9.1.1**
see also Communal residential
- Movement of people **C/VM2 Part 3**
 alerting people with warning systems **C/VM2 3.4**
 small ancillary spaces **C/VM2 3.4.1**
 delayed evacuation strategy requirements **C/VM2 3.3**
 egress past a burning object **C/VM2 3.7**
 exposure to radiation along egress routes **C/VM2 3.6**
 exposure time **C/VM2 3.6.4**
 radiation from a window to egressing occupant **C/VM2 3.6.3**
 time to onset of pain **C/VM2 3.6.2**
 fire modelling to determine ASET **C/VM2 3.5**
 occupant numbers **C/VM2 3.1, Table 3.1**
 required safe egress time (RSET) **C/VM2 3.2**
 detection time **C/VM2 3.2.1, Table 3.2**
 direction of opening **C/VM2 3.2.6**
 exit doors **C/VM2 3.2.7**
 notification time **C/VM2 3.2.2**
 pre-travel activity time **C/VM2 3.2.3, Table 3.3**
 time if flow governs **C/VM2 3.2.5**
 travel time **C/VM2 3.2.4**
- Municipal offices **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)**
see also Commercial buildings
- Museums
see Communal non-residential

N

- Natural Light** **G7**
awareness of the outside environment **NZBC/G7.1, G7.2, G7.3.2**
minimum illuminance **NZBC/G7.3.1**
- Natural ventilation
see **Ventilation**
- Network utility operators **NZBC/G11.3.6, G13.3.3, G15.3.3, H1.1; F1/VM1 2.1.1 f)**
G14/VM1 1.2.1 a), G14/AS1 1.2.1, 1.2.2
- No-sky line condition **G7/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 3**
- Non-potable water supply
see Water supply
- Non-return valves **G12/AS1** Figures 7 to 10, Table 6
- Notional boundary see Control of external fire spread
- Nurses' or Nursing homes
see Communal residential

O

- Obstructions **NZBC/D1.3.2 (b); D1/AS1 1.5**
 dangerous projections..... **D1/AS1 1.5.4**, Figure 6
 isolated columns **D1/AS1 1.5.5**, Figure 7
 major projections..... **D1/AS1 1.5.3**, Figure 5
 minor projections **D1/AS1 1.5.1, 1.5.2**, Figure 4
- Occupants **NZBC/D2.3.5 (b), G1.3.3 (e)**
- Occupant loads **C/AS2 1.4, C/AS3 1.4, C/AS4 1.4, 1.4.1, 1.4.2, 1.4.3**, Figure 1.1,
C/AS5 1.4, 1.4.1, 1.4.2, 1.4.3, Figure 1.1,
C/AS6 1.4, 1.4.1, 1.4.2, 1.4.3, Figure 1.1
F7/AS1 1.1.2 a), 2.1.1, F6/AS1 Appendix A
 fixed seating **C/AS4 1.4.4**,
 justification for exceptions..... **C/AS4 1.4.6, C/AS5 1.4.6, C/AS6 1.4.6**
 occupant densities **C/AS3 1.4.2**, Table 1.2, **C/AS4 1.4.2**, Table 1.2,
C/AS5 1.4.2, Table 1.2, **C/AS6 1.4.2**, Table 1.2
 risk group SI **C/AS3 1.4.4**
 risk group SM **C/AS2 1.4.5**
- Occupied spaces..... **G4/AS1 1.1.1, 1.2.1 a); G6/AS1 1.0.1 a)**
- Odours
 see **Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste**
- Offices
 see Commercial buildings
- Oil fired appliances
 see Prevention of fire occurring
- Old people's homes..... **NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a) (b),**
G5.3.1 to G5.3.3, G5.3.5, G7.2, G12.3.4;
G1/AS1 Table 4; G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1;
G5/AS1 1.0.3, 2.0, Table 3
 see also Communal residential buildings
- On-site disposal **G13/VM4 1.0**
 scope **G13/VM4 1.1**
- Open fires see Prevention of fire occurring
- Open paths..... **C/AS2 3.6, C/AS3 3.6, C/AS4 3.6, C/AS5 3.6, C/AS6 3.6**
F8/AS1 4.1.1 a)
 see also Escape routes
 exception for education buildings **C/AS4 3.6.3**
 intermediate floors **C/AS2 3.7.14, C/AS4 3.7.14, C/AS5 3.7.14, C/AS6 3.7.14**
 length..... **C/AS2 3.4.2**, Figure 3.7, Table 3.2,
C/AS3 3.4.2, Figure 3.7, Table 3.2, **C/AS4 3.4.2**, Figure 3.7, Table 3.2,
C/AS5 3.4.2, Figure 3.7, Table 3.2, **C/AS6 3.4.2**, Figure 3.7, Table 3.2
 passing into an adjacent firecell..... **C/AS2 3.7.13**, Figure 3.15,
C/AS3 3.7.13, Figure 3.15, **C/AS4 3.7.13**, Figure 3.15,
C/AS5 3.7.13, Figure 3.15, **C/AS6 3.7.13**, Figure 3.15
 separation..... **C/AS2 3.6.2**, Figure 3.12, **C/AS3 3.6.2**, Figure 3.12,
C/AS4 3.6.2, Figure 3.12, **C/AS5 3.6.2**, Figure 3.12,
C/AS6 3.6.2, Figure 3.12
 special cases **C/AS2 3.7, C/AS3 3.7, C/AS4 3.7, C/AS5 3.7, C/AS6 3.7**
 aisles..... **C/AS4 3.7.5, 3.7.6**, Figure 3.14
 fixed seating **C/AS4 3.7.4**, Figures 3.13 and 3.14, Table 3.3
 open paths via unenclosed stairs **C/AS2 3.7.3**
 loose seating **C/AS4 3.7.11, 3.7.12**
 ramps..... **C/AS2 3.7.1, C/AS3 3.7.1, C/AS4 3.7.1, C/AS5 3.7.1, C/AS6 3.7.1**
 separate tenancy **C/AS2 3.7.2, C/AS4 3.7.2, C/AS5 3.7.2, C/AS6 3.7.2**
- Opening windows..... **F4/AS1 2.0**

Outbuildings..... **NZBC/A1 7.0. D1.2.1, D1.3.2, D1.3.3 (h) (i),**
G1.3.4, G8.2, G12.3.8; **G1/AS1** Table 4

Ovens
 see **Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination**, cooking

Overflow **E3/AS1** 2.0

 containment **E3/AS1** 2.0.1, 2.1, Figure 1

 floor waste **E3/AS1** 2.0.1, 2.2

P

- Parapets **E2/AS1** 6.0, 9.3.9, 9.4.8, 9.5.5, 9.6.9.8, 9.7.7, 9.8.7, 9.9.10
 see also Control of external fire spread
 capping materials **E2/AS1** 6.3
 general **E2/AS1** 6.2, Figure 9
 limitations **E2/AS1** 6.1
 integral surface cappings **E2/AS1** 6.6
 membrane cappings **E2/AS1** 6.5
 metal cappings **E2/AS1** 6.4, Figures 9 and 10
 parapet-to-wall junctions **E2/AS1** 6.4.1, Figures 11 and 12
- Pedestrians
 see **Access Routes**
- People with disabilities **NZBC/F8.3.4; D1/AS1** 1.1.4,
 Table 9; **E3/AS1** 3.3.2; **F8/AS1** 6.0;
 G1/AS1 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, Figures 5 to 9,
 Tables 1 and 2; **G2/AS1** 1.2.2, Figure 2; **G3/AS1** 1.5.2;
 G5/AS1 3.0; **G9/AS1** 2.0; **G12/AS1** 8.0
 accessible route identification **F8/AS1** 6.1 a), b), c), Figure 9
 accessible routes **G1/AS1** 4.1.1
 electrical installations **NZBC/G9.3.4**
 enhanced listening systems **NZBC/G5.3.5, G5.3.6**
 facility identification **F8/AS1** 6.1 d), Figure 8
 food preparation and cooking facilities **NZBC/G3.3.5**
 information and warning signs **NZBC/F8.2 (d), F8.3.4**
 listening system identification **F8/AS1** 6.1 d), 6.3, Figure 10, Figure 7
 mechanical installations for access
 see **Mechanical Installations for Access**
 personal hygiene facilities **NZBC/G1.3.5**
 provision of laundering facilities **NZBC/G2.3.4**
 usable water taps **G12/AS1** Figure 18
 water supply **NZBC/G12.3.9**
- Pergolas
 see Decks and Pergolas
- Personal Hygiene** **G1; NZBC/G13.1 (a)**
 see also Sanitary fixtures
 absence of facilities **NZBC/G1.1 (b)**
 access to facilities **NZBC/D1.3.3 (c), G1.3.5**
 location of facilities **NZBC/G1.3.4**
 non-water-borne disposal system **NZBC/G1.3.2 (h)**
 overflows from sanitary fixtures **NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4**
 people with disabilities **NZBC/G1.3.5; G1/AS1** 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2
 privacy **G1/AS1** 6.0
 cubicles **G1/AS1** 6.2, Figure 11
 line of sight **G1/AS1** 6.1, Figure 10
 lobbies **G1/AS1** 6.3
 unisex facilities **G1/AS1** 1.1.5
 privies **G1/AS1** 5.0.2
 water-borne disposal system **NZBC/G1.3.2 (g), G13.1 (b)**
- Piles
 see Foundations
- Piped Services** **G10**
 extreme temperatures **NZBC/G10.1, G10.2**
 gas pipes **NZBC/G10.3.2, G10.3**
 hazardous substances **NZBC/G10.1, G10.2**
 identification of piping systems **NZBC/G10.3.4**
 isolating devices **NZBC/G10.3.6**
 piping systems **NZBC/G10.3.1**
 preventing sound transmission **G6/AS1** 1.0.1 c)
 protection against corrosion **NZBC/G10.3.3**

- Pipes
see also Discharge pipes, Discharge stacks, Vent pipes
 installation **G11/AS1** 4.0
 jointing methods **G13/AS1** 6.1.1
 materials **G13/AS1** 2.1.1, Table 1
 sizing **G11/AS1** 1.0
 pressure ranges **G11/AS1** 1.1
 flow velocities **G11/AS1** 1.4
 pressures above 1.5 kPa **G11/AS1** 1.3
 pressures below 1.5 kPa **G11/AS1** 1.2
 supports **G13/AS1** 6.2.1, Table 7
 thermal movement **G13/AS1** 6.3
 watertightness **G13/AS1** 7.0
- Places of assembly **D1/AS1** 8.0
see also Communal non-residential
- Plumbing systems
see **Foul Water**
- Plywood sheet **E2/AS1** 9.8
 corners **E2/AS1** 9.8.4
 external **E2/AS1** 9.8.4.1, Figure 122
 Internal **E2/AS1** 9.8.4.2, Figure 123
 finishes **E2/AS1** 9.8.9
 flashing material **E2/AS1** 9.8.5, Tables 20-22
 installation **E2/AS1** 9.8.3, Table 23
 fixings **E2/AS1** 9.8.3.1, Table 24
 joints **E2/AS1** 9.8.3.2, Figures 119 and 121
 limitations **E2/AS1** 9.8.1
 materials **E2/AS1** 9.8.2, Figure 119
 parapets and enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.8.7
 soffit details **E2/AS1** 9.8.6, Figure 8A
 windows and doors **E2/AS1** 9.8.8
 direct fixed **E2/AS1** 9.8.8.1, Figure 115
 with cavity **E2/AS1** 9.8.8.2, Figure 116
- Pools
see Swimming pools
- Potable water supply
see **Water Supplies**
- Pressed metal tiles **E2/AS1** 8.3
 barges **E2/AS1** 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
 fascias **E2/AS1** 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
 fixings **E2/AS1** 8.3.7, Figure 33
 flashings **E2/AS1** 8.3.8, Table 7, Figures 34-37
 gutters **E2/AS1** 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
 installation **E2/AS1** 8.3.2
 limitations **E2/AS1** 8.3.1
 metal substrate **E2/AS1** 8.3.4
 aluminium **E2/AS1** 8.3.4.3
 choice of metal **E2/AS1** 8.3.4.1
 steel **E2/AS1** 8.3.4.2, Table 20
 ridges **E2/AS1** 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
 roof penetrations **E2/AS1** 8.3.10, Figure 29
 roof pitch **E2/AS1** 8.3.5, Figure 32
 tiles and accessories **E2/AS1** 8.3.3
 underlay **E2/AS1** 8.3.6, Table 23
- Pressure limiting valves **G12/AS1** 5.3.2, 6.2.1 c), Figure 8, Table 6
- Pressure reducing valves **G12/AS1** 5.3.2, 6.2.1 b), Figures 7 and 9, Table 6
- Pressure regulators **G11/AS1** 2.1
- Pressure relief valves **G12/AS1** 6.4.1, 6.6, Table 6
 installation **G12/AS1** 6.6.5
 relief valve drains **G12/AS1** 6.7, Figures 12 and 13

- Prevention of fire occurring **C/AS1** Part 7, **C/AS2** Part 7, **C/AS3**,
C/AS4 Part 7, **C/AS5** Part 7, **C/AS6** Part 7
- downlights **C/AS1** 7.4, **C/AS2** 7.4, **C/AS3** 7.4,
C/AS4 7.4, **C/AS5** 7.4, **C/AS6** 7.4
- gas burning appliances..... **C/AS1** 7.2, **C/AS2** 7.2, **C/AS3** 7.2,
C/AS4 7.2, **C/AS5** 7.2, **C/AS6** 7.2
- modifications for AS/NZS 5601 **C/AS1** 7.2.2, **C/AS2** 7.2.2,
C/AS3 7.2.2, **C/AS4** 7.2.2, **C/AS5** 7.2.2, **C/AS6** 7.2.2
- oil-fired appliances **C/AS1** 7.3, **C/AS2** 7.3, **C/AS3** 7.3,
C/AS4 7.3, **C/AS5** 7.3, **C/AS6** 7.3
- modifications to AS 1691 **C/AS1** 7.3.2, **C/AS2** 7.3.2, **C/AS3** 7.3.2,
C/AS4 7.3.2, **C/AS5** 7.3.2, **C/AS6** 7.3.2
- open fires **C/AS1** 7.5, **C/AS2** 7.5, **C/AS3** 7.5, **C/AS4** 7.5, **C/AS5** 7.5, **C/AS6** 7.5
- chimneys **C/AS1** 7.5.1, 7.5.2, 7.5.3, 7.5.4, 7.5.5, 7.5.6, 7.5.7,
7.5.8, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.5.11, 7.5.12, Figures 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3,
Table 7.1, **C/AS2** 7.5.1, 7.5.2, 7.5.3, 7.5.4, 7.5.5, 7.5.6, 7.5.7,
7.5.8, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.5.11, 7.5.12, Figures 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3, Table 7.1
C/AS3 7.5.1, 7.5.2, 7.5.3, 7.5.4, 7.5.5, 7.5.6, 7.5.7, 7.5.8, 7.5.9,
7.5.10, 7.5.11, 7.5.12, Figures 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3, Table 7.1,
C/AS4 7.5.1, 7.5.2, 7.5.3, 7.5.4, 7.5.5, 7.5.6, 7.5.7, 7.5.8,
7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.5.11, 7.5.12, Figures 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3, Table 7.1,
C/AS5 7.5.1, 7.5.2, 7.5.3, 7.5.4, 7.5.5, 7.5.6, 7.5.7, 7.5.8, 7.5.9,
7.5.10, 7.5.11, 7.5.12, Figures 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3, Table 7.1,
C/AS6 7.5.1, 7.5.2, 7.5.3, 7.5.4, 7.5.5, 7.5.6, 7.5.7, 7.5.8,
7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.5.11, 7.5.12, Figures 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3, Table 7.1
- solid fuel appliances..... **C/AS1** 7.1, **C/AS2** 7.1, **C/AS3** 7.1,
C/AS4 7.1, **C/AS5** 7.1, **C/AS6** 7.1
- modifications for AS/NZS 2918 **C/AS1** 7.1.2, **C/AS2** 7.1.2,
C/AS3 7.1.2, **C/AS4** 7.1.2, **C/AS5** 7.1.2, **C/AS6** 7.1.2
- Principal entrance..... **D1/AS1** 1.1
- Prisons
 see Communal residential
- Privacy
 see **Personal Hygiene**
- Privies
 see **Personal Hygiene**, privies
- Profiled metal roof claddings **E2/AS1** 8.4
- allowance for expansion..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.10, Table 16, Figure 39
- fixings: corrugated and trapezoidal profiles **E2/AS1** 8.4.8, Figure 39,
Tables 11, 12, 14, 15
- requirements **E2/AS1** 8.4.8.1
- fixings: trough profile **E2/AS1** 8.4.9, Figure 40, Tables 13, 20, 21
- flashing details **E2/AS1** 8.4.12, Figures 43-48
- flashing requirements **E2/AS1** 8.4.11, Tables 21 and 22, Figures 41 and 42
- fixing flashings..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.11.1, Table 21, Figure 6
- general..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.2
- hidden gutters **E2/AS1** 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
- internal gutters **E2/AS1** 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52
- limitations **E2/AS1** 8.4.1
- materials..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.3
- aluminium **E2/AS1** 8.4.3.3
- choice of metal..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.3.1, Table 20
- steel..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.3.2, Table 20
- parallel hidden gutters..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
- profile closure..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.15
- profiles..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.4, Figure 38
- roof penetrations..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.17, Table 17, Figures 21 and 53-55
- roof pitch **E2/AS1** 8.4.5
- stopends..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.13, Figure 49
- structure..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.6, Tables 11-15
- turn-downs at gutters **E2/AS1** 8.4.14
- underlay..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.7, Table 23
- valley gutters..... **E2/AS1** 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figure 51

Profiled metal wall claddings	E2/AS1 9.6
(horizontal and vertical)	
fixings	E2/AS1 9.6.6, Table 20, Figure 39
flashings	E2/AS1 9.6.7, Figures 5 and 6, Table 21
general	E2/AS1 9.6.2
horizontal profiled metal on cavity	E2/AS1 9.6.9
barges	E2/AS1 9.6.9.4, Figure 97
bottom of cladding	E2/AS1 9.6.9.5, Figure 98
cavity battens	E2/AS1 9.6.9.2, Table 23
corners	E2/AS1 9.6.9.3, Figure 96
installation	E2/AS1 9.6.9.1, Table 23
parapets and balustrades	E2/AS1 9.6.9.8, Figures 101 and 102
penetrations	E2/AS1 9.6.9.6, Figures 53 and 69
windows and doors	E2/AS1 9.6.9.7, Figures 99 and 100
limitations	E2/AS1 9.6.1, Figure 38, Table 3
maintenance	E2/AS1 9.6.4
materials	E2/AS1 9.6.3
aluminium	E2/AS1 9.6.3.3
choice of metal	E2/AS1 9.6.3.1, Table 20
steel	E2/AS1 9.6.3.2, Table 20
profiles	E2/AS1 9.6.5, Figure 38
vertical profile – direct fixed	E2/AS1 9.6.8
barges	E2/AS1 9.6.8.2, Figure 92
bottom of cladding	E2/AS1 9.6.8.3, Figure 93
corners	E2/AS1 9.6.8.4, Figures 93 and 94
installation	E2/AS1 9.6.8.1, Table 23
penetrations	E2/AS1 9.6.8.5, Figures 53 and 69
windows and doors	E2/AS1 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100
Protecting other property	
<i>see</i> Internal Moisture, Water Supplies	
Protection from Fire	C/AS1, C/AS2, C/AS3, C/AS4,
	C/AS5, C/AS6, C/AS7, C/VM1, C/VM2
general	C/AS1 Part 1 C/AS2 Part 1, C/AS3 Part 1,
	C/AS4 Part 1, C/AS5 Part 1, C/AS6 Part 1, C/VM1 Part 1
design scenarios: Building Code objectives and	
performance criteria	C/VM2 1.4, Table 1.1
how to use Verification Method C/VM2	C/VM2 1.3, Figure 1.1
introduction	C/AS7 1.1, Table 1.1, C/VM2 Part 1
scope	C/AS1 1.1, 1.1.1, Table 1.1, C/AS2 1.1, 1.1.1, Table 1.1,
	C/AS3 1.1, 1.1.1, Table 1.1, C/AS4 1.1, 1.1.1, Table 1.1,
	C/AS5 1.1, 1.1.1, Table 1.1, C/AS6 1.1, 1.1.1, Table 1.1,
	C/AS7 1.1.1, C/VM2 1.2
hazardous substances	C/AS1 1.1.5, C/AS2 1.1.5,
	C/AS3 1.1.5, C/AS4 1.1.5, C/AS5 1.1.5, C/AS6 1.1.5
outside the scope	C/AS1 1.1.2, C/AS2 1.1.2, C/AS3 1.1.2,
	C/AS4 1.1.2, C/AS5 1.1.2, C/AS6 1.1.2
purpose of C/VM2	C/VM2 1.1
using the Acceptable Solutions	C/AS1 1.2, C/AS2 1.2, C/AS3 1.2,
	C/AS4 1.2, C/AS5 1.2, C/AS6 1.2, C/AS7 1.2
primary risk groups	C/AS2 1.2.2, C/AS3 1.2.2,
	C/AS4 1.2.2, C/AS5 1.2.2, C/AS6 1.2.2
Protection of gas supply	G11/AS1 7.0
contamination	G11/AS1 7.1
low pressures	G11/AS1 7.2
Protection of water supplies	G12/AS1 3.4
air gaps	G12/AS1 3.5
backflow prevention devices	G12/AS1 3.6
atmospheric vacuum breakers	G12/AS1 3.6.2 d) 3.6.4 d), 3.7.1, Table 2
double check valves	G12/AS1 3.6.2 b), 3.7.2, Table 2
pressure vacuum breakers	G12/AS1 3.6.2 c), 3.6.4 c), 3.7.1, Table 2
reduced pressure zone devices	G12/AS1 3.6.2 a), 3.6.4 a), 3.7.2, Table 2
cross connections	G12/AS1 3.1, 3.2
hazard	G12/AS1 3.3
installation	G12/AS1 3.6.3, 3.6.4, 3.7.1
testing	G12/AS1 3.7

- Roof/wall junctions **E2/AS1** 5.0
 apron flashings **E2/AS1** 5.1, Table 7, Figures 7, 8B and 35
 barges **E2/AS1** 5.2, Figure 8B
 fascias **E2/AS1** 5.2, Figure 8B
 gutters **E2/AS1** 5.2, Figure 8B
 soffits **E2/AS1** 5.3, Figures 8A and 114
- Roofs see Control of external fire and smoke spread
- Rubbish chutes
 see **Solid Waste**
- Run-off
 estimation of run-off **E1/VM1** 2.0
 Rational Method **E1/VM1** 2.0.1
 rainfall intensity **E1/VM1** 2.2, **E1/AS1** Appendix A
 run-off coefficient **E1/VM1** 2.1, Table 1
 slope correction **E1/VM1** 2.1.3, Table 2
 time of concentration **E1/VM1** 2.2.1, 2.3
 alternative procedure **E1/VM1** 2.3.6, 2.3.7
 catchment slopes **E1/VM1** 2.3.7
 open channel flow **E1/VM1** 2.3.5
 pipe flow **E1/VM1** 2.3.4, Table 1
 time of entry **E1/VM1** 2.3.2
 overland flow **E1/VM1** 2.3.2 b), Figure 1
 road channel flow **E1/VM1** 2.3.2 b), Figure 2
 time of network flow **E1/VM1** 2.3.3

S

S rating

see Fire resistance ratings

Safe paths **C/AS2** 3.9.4, 3.9.5, 3.9.6, **C/AS3** 3.9.4, 3.9.5, 3.9.6,
C/AS4 3.9.4, 3.9.5, **C/AS5** 3.9.4, 3.9.5, **C/AS6**
F8/AS1 4.2.3 b)
 see also Escape routes
 length restrictions **C/AS2** 3.9.7, Table 3.4, **C/AS3** 3.9.7, Table 3.4,
C/AS4 3.9.7, Table 3.4, **C/AS5** 3.9.7, Table 3.4, **C/AS6** 3.9.4, 3.9.5
 lifts **C/AS2** 3.10.3, 3.10.4, Figure 3.17,
C/AS3 3.10.3, 3.10.4, **C/AS4** 3.10.3, 3.10.4, Figure 3.17,
C/AS5 3.10.3, 3.10.4, Figure 3.17, **C/AS6** 3.10.3, 3.10.4, Figure 3.17
 separation, glazing and smoke separation..... **C/AS2** 3.9.9, 3.9.10, **C/AS3** 3.9.9, 3.9.10,
C/AS4 3.9.9, 3.9.10, **C/AS5** 3.9.9, 3.9.10,
C/AS6 3.9.9, 3.9.10
 special conditions for risk group SM **C/AS2** 3.9.11, 3.14
 termination **C/AS2** 3.9.8, **C/AS3** 3.9.8,
C/AS4 3.9.8, **C/AS5** 3.9.8, **C/AS6** 3.9.8

Safe trays

see Storage water heaters

Safe water temperatures

see **Water Supplies**, hot

Safety from Falling **F4**

see also Barriers

accidental falls **NZBC/F4.2**
 children **NZBC/F4.3.4 (f)**, **F4/AS1** 1.2.1, Figures 1-4
 gates **NZBC/F4.3.5 (a)**
 impact of people **NZBC/F4.3.4 (d)**
 low risk areas **F4/AS1** 1.2.2
 pressure of people **NZBC/F4.3.4 (d)**
 opening windows **F4/AS1** 2.0
 provision of barriers **NZBC/F4.3.1**
 retaining walls **F4/AS1** 1.2.5
 roofs with permanent access **NZBC/F4.3.2**
 seats on decks **F4/AS1** 1.2.4, Figure 6
 swimming pools **NZBC/F4.3.3**, **F4.3.5**
 fencing **F4/AS1** 2.7

Safety of users

see **Hazardous Agents on Site, Hazardous Building Materials, Hazardous Substances and Processes, Safety from Falling, Construction and Demolition Hazards, Lighting for Emergency, Warning Systems, Signs**

Sanitary appliances **NZBC/G13.2**; **G12/AS1** 8.0.1, Table 1;
G13/AS1 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2
 washing machines **G13/AS1** Figure 2, Table 2

Sanitary fixtures **NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4**, **G1.3.1**, **G1.3.2**, **G12.2**, **G12.3.3**, **G12.3.5**,
G12.3.6 (b), **G13.2**; **G12/AS1** 6.12.1, 6.14.2, Figure 20,
 Tables 1 and 3; **G13/AS1** 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2

see also Basins, Bidets, **Personal Hygiene**, Showers, Urinals, WC pans

acceptable standards **G1/AS1** 2.6
 access
 pans **G1/AS1** 4.2.7
 people with disabilities **G1/AS1** 1.2.2, 4.1
 basins **G1/AS1** 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1
 bidets **G1/AS1** 2.4
 communal sanitary fixtures **G1/AS1** 3.4
 construction and installation **G1/AS1** 2.0
 locations **G1/AS1** 3.0, 4.2.1
 non-flushing sanitary fixtures **G1/AS1** 5.0
 privies **G1/AS1** 5.0.2

- Sanitary fixtures (continued)*
- number of fixtures required **G1/AS1** 1.0, Figure 1, Tables 1 to 4
 - safe water temperatures..... **G12/AS1** 6.14.1, 6.14.2
 - sanitary towel disposal..... **G1/AS1** 1.1.5 b), 1.2, 1.2.2
 - showers..... **G1/AS1** 2.5, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2
 - soil fixtures **G1/AS1** 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1
 - see also WC pans
 - space dimensions **G1/AS1** 3.1, 4.2.2, 6.2.1, Figures 4 to 9
 - toilets
 - see WC pans
 - types of fixtures required..... **G1/AS1** 1.0, Tables 1 and 2
 - urinals **G1/AS1** 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1
 - bowl urinals **G1/AS1** 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5
 - continuous wall urinals..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.1, Figure 3
 - discharge system **G1/AS1** 2.3.2
 - flushing systems **G1/AS1** 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5
 - manually operated..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.8
 - stall urinals..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.1, 2.3.5
 - surface finishes **G1/AS1** 2.3.4
 - trough urinals..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.1 to 2.3.3
- Sanitation
see **Personal Hygiene**
- Schools
see Communal non-residential
- SDI
see Smoke developed index
- Seats on decks..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.4, Figure 6
- Security **NZBC/G14.3.2 (g); G14/VM1** 1.9, **G14/AS1** 1.1
- Seismic resistance of engineering systems..... **B1/VM1** 13.0
- Serviceability limit states
see **Structure**, limit states
- Services and facilities
see **Personal Hygiene, Laundering, Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination, Ventilation, Interior Environment, Airborne and Impact Sound, Natural Light, Artificial Light, Electricity, Piped Services, Gas as an Energy Source, Water Supply, Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste**
- Sewers
see **Foul Water**
- SFI
see Spread of flame index
- Sheds
see Outbuildings
- Shops
see Commercial buildings
- Showers **E3/AS1** 3.2, 3.2.2, 3.3, Figures 4 and 5; **G1/AS1** 2.5, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2; **G13/AS1** Table 2
- Shrinkage
see **Structure**, loads

- Signs..... **F8; NZBC/C2.3.3, D1.3.4 (a), D2.3.2 (d);**
D1/AS1 1.1.1, **F8/AS1** 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0
- exit signs **F8/AS1** 4.0, Table 4, Table 5, Figure 3
 - alternative exit signs..... **F8/AS1** 4.2.3
 - arrows..... **F8/AS1** 4.3.2, Table 5
 - colours **F8/AS1** 3.1, 4.4, Table 2, Table 3
 - illumination **F8/AS1** 4.5
 - externally illuminated **F8/AS1** 4.5.2
 - internally illuminated **F8/AS1** 4.5.3
 - photoluminescent..... **F8/AS1** 4.5.4
 - lighting supply **F8/AS1** 4.5.5
 - lettering **F8/AS1** 2.0, Table 1
 - location **F8/AS1** 4.1
 - number exit signs..... **F8/AS1** 4.1.2, 4.1.3
 - wording..... **F8/AS1** 2.3, 4.2
 - fire safety signs..... **F8/AS1** 5.0
 - call points..... **F8/AS1** 5.1, Figure 4
 - colours **F8/AS1** 5.1, 5.2.3, 5.4, 5.5 d)
 - fire and smoke control doors..... **F8/AS1** 5.2
 - stairs for Fire Service personnel **F8/AS1** 5.5, Figure 6, Figure 7
 - storage heights..... **F8/AS1** 5.4, Figure 5
 - hazard signs..... **F8/AS1** 7.0
 - hazardous substances and processes **F8/AS1** 7.1
 - electrical hazards **F8/AS1** 7.2, Figure 11
 - escalators and moving walks **F8/AS1** 7.5, Figure 13
 - lifts **F8/AS1** 7.3
 - passenger lifts..... **F8/AS1** 7.3 a)
 - service lifts..... **F8/AS1** 7.3 b)
 - lettering type and proportions **F8/AS1**, Table 1
 - machine rooms..... **F8/AS1** 7.4, Figure 12
 - non-potable water **F8/AS1** 7.6, Figure 14
 - people with disabilities signs **F8/AS1** 6.1
 - international symbol for access **F8/AS1** 6.2, Figure 9
 - layout **F8/AS1** 6.2, Figure 8
 - listening systems..... **F8/AS1** 6.3, Figure 10
 - safety signs **F8/AS1** 3.0
 - caution signs..... **F8/AS1** 3.2.2, Figure 2
 - colours **F8/AS1** 3.1, Table 2, Table 3
 - layout **F8/AS1** 3.2, Figure 1, Figure 2
 - prohibition and stop signs **F8/AS1** 3.2.1, Figure 1
 - safe condition signs..... **F8/AS1** 3.2.3
 - safety symbols **F8/AS1** 3.2.4
- Single escape routes
 see Escape routes
- Sinks..... **E3/AS1** 3.2.2, Figure 3; **G3/AS1** 1.1.5, **G13/AS1** Table 2
 see also Basins, Cleaners' sinks, Kitchen sinks
- Site characteristics..... **B1/VM4** Appendix A
- Site investigation..... **B1/VM4** 3.5.1, 4.7.1, Appendix A; **F1/VM1** 1.0.3, 2.0, Figure 1
- analysis..... **F1/VM1** 2.4
 - assessment..... **F1/VM1** 1.0.3, 2.5, Figure 2
 - detailed investigation **B1/VM4** A1.3; **F1/VM1** 1.0.2 c), 2.3
 - history and records..... **F1/VM1** 2.1
 - preliminary investigation **B1/VM4** A1.2; **F1/VM1** 1.0.2 b), 2.2
 - previous industrial use of site **F1/VM1** 2.1.1, Table 1
 - recording information **B1/VM4** A1.4
- Site specific considerations **B2/VM1** 1.2
- Siteworks
 see Design, siteworks
- Slip resistance..... **D1/VM1** 1.0, **D1/AS1** 2.1, 3.1.4, 4.1.4 c), Table 2

Slopes	D1/AS1 1.2
acceptable slopes	D1/AS1 1.2.1, Figure 2
changes in level.....	D1/AS1 1.3, 1.3.1
cross falls.....	D1/AS1 1.2.2
Slope stability.....	B1/VM4 1.0.4
Small chimneys	
<i>see</i> Chimneys	
Socket outlets	
<i>see</i> Electricity , people with disabilities	
Soil fixtures	G1/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1
<i>see also</i> WC pans	
Soil properties.....	B1/VM4 1.0.5, 2.0.6, 2.0.7, Appendix A
Soil shrinkage and expansion.....	B1/VM4 3.1.2, 3.4.3, A1.2.1
Soils	
adverse moisture conditions.....	B1/VM4 1.0.2
Solar water heaters.....	G12
installation	G12/AS2 5.0
pipe installation.....	G12/AS2 5.3
pipe insulation.....	G12/AS2 5.4
weathertightness	G12/AS2 5.2, Table 4, Figures 2–9
wetback water heaters.....	G12/AS2 5.1
location.....	G12/AS2 4.0, 4.1
solar orientation and inclination.....	G12/AS2 4.2, Figure 2
maintenance and durability	G12/AS2 7.0
durability	G12/AS2 7.2
maintenance	G12/AS2 7.1
materials.....	G12/AS2 2.0
material selection	G12/AS2 2.1, Tables 1, 2 and 3
requirements	G12/AS2 3.0
operating and safety devices	G12/AS2 3.4
protection from frosts	G12/AS2 3.6, Figure 1
protection from Legionella bacteria	G12/AS2 3.5
sizing of systems	G12/AS2 3.3
solar controller.....	G12/AS2 3.2
solar water heaters and components	G12/AS2 3.1.1
scope.....	G12/AS2 1.0
exclusions.....	G12/AS2 1.2
structural support limitations	G12/AS2 1.1
structural support.....	G12/AS2 6.0
collector support rails.....	G12/AS2 6.5, Figures 17 and 18
elevated solar collectors parallel to the roof	G12/AS2 6.4, Figures 14–16
general requirements	G12/AS2 6.2, Figures 10–13
mounting collectors at different pitch to roof cladding.....	G12/AS2 6.6, Figures 19 and 20
scope.....	G12/AS2 6.1
Solid fuel appliances.....	C/VM1 1.1
<i>see also</i> Prevention of fire occurring	
domestic	B1/AS3 2.0
limited heat transfer	C/VM1 1.1.1
Solid plastering.....	B2/AS1 3.3

- Solid Waste** **G15**
- collection **NZBC/G15.2, G15.3.1**
 - holding **NZBC/G15.2, G15.3.1**
 - sewer **NZBC/G15.3.3**
 - storage **G15/AS1** 1.0.1, 3.0, Figure 1
 - alternative solution **G15/AS1** 3.1
 - capacity **G15/AS1** 1.0.1
 - location **G15/AS1** 2.0.1
 - floors **G15/AS1** 3.0.2
 - walls **G15/AS1** 3.0.3
 - water supply **G15/AS1** 3.0.7
 - windows **G15/AS1** 3.0.4, 3.0.6
 - space required **G15/AS1** 1.0.2
 - vehicle access **G15/AS1** 3.0.10
 - ventilation **G15/AS1** 1.0.3, 3.0.8, 3.0.9
 - temperature **NZBC/G15.3.1 (d)**
 - waste disposal units **NZBC/G15.3.3**
 - waste (rubbish) chutes **NZBC/G15.3.2; G15/AS1** 4.0, Figure 2
 - cleaning **G15/AS1** 4.0.3
 - odours **NZBC/G15.3.2 (d)**
 - restricted access **NZBC/G15.3.2 (g)**
 - spread of fire **NZBC/G15.3.2 (e)**
- Sound insulation tests
see **Airborne and Impact Sound**
- Sound transmission class (STC)
see **Airborne and Impact Sound**
- Specified intended life
see **Durability**
- Spread of Fire
- automatic fire suppression systems **NZBC/C3.3.6**
see also Fire safety precautions
 - automatic smoke control systems **NZBC/C3.3.8**
see also Smoke control
 - concealed spaces **NZBC/C3.3.4**
 - protect adjacent property **NZBC/C3.1 (c), C3.2 (c)**
 - resistant to spread of fire **NZBC/C2.3.3, C3.3.1**
 - rubbish chutes **NZBC/G15.3.2**
 - safeguard the environment **NZBC/C3.1 (d), C3.2 (d)**
 - safety while evacuating **NZBC/C3.1 (a)**
see also **Means of Escape**
- Sprinklers
see Fire safety precautions
- Stability
see Fire resistance ratings, **Structure**
- Stadiums
see Communal non-residential
- Staircase
see Stairways
- Stairs
see Stairways

- Stairways..... **NZBC/D1.3.2 (f) to (i), D1.3.4 (g) (h); D1/AS1 4.0**
see also Access Routes, accessible routes and ladders
 accessible stairs..... **D1/AS1 4.1.7, 4.1.8 b), 4.2.1,**
 6.0.1 to 6.0.4, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8
 common stairs..... **D1/AS1 4.1.8, 4.2.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8**
 curved stairs..... **D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4, Figure 17**
 landings..... **D1/AS1 4.3, 4.3.1, 4.3.6 c), 4.6.2 c), Figures 14 and 25**
 direction changes..... **D1/AS1 Figure 16**
 length..... **D1/AS1 4.3.4, 4.3.6 c)**
 maximum rise..... **D1/AS1 4.3.2, Table 7**
 obstructions..... **D1/AS1 4.3.5, Figure 15**
 width..... **D1/AS1 4.3.3**
 lighting..... **D1/AS1 4.6, 4.6.2, Table 8**
 pitch..... **D1/AS1 4.1, Figure 11, Table 6**
 pitch lines..... **D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4.1, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, 4.5.2**
 private stairs..... **D1/AS1 4.6.2, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8**
 main..... **D1/AS1 Figure 11, Table 6**
 minor..... **D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6**
 risers..... **D1/AS1 4.1, 4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.1.8, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, Figures 11 and 12, Table 6**
 secondary..... **D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6**
 service stairs..... **D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8**
 slip resistance..... **D1/AS1 4.1.4 c), Table 2**
 spiral stairs..... **D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4.1**
 treads..... **D1/AS1 4.1, 4.1.2 to 4.1.7, 4.5.1, 4.6, Figures 11 to 13, Table 6**
 tapered treads..... **D1/AS1 4.4, Figure 17**
 visibility..... **D1/AS1 4.3.6, 4.6, Table 8; G8/AS1 1.0.3**
 width..... **D1/AS1 4.2, 4.2.1, 4.4.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 6.0.1**
 winders..... **D1/AS1 4.5, Figure 18**
- Standard test
see Test methods
- Steel
see Design, steel
- Storage water heaters..... **NZBC/H1.3.4; G12/AS1 6.2, 6.3.1, 6.6.3, 6.6.5, 6.7.2,**
 6.6.4, 6.8 to 6.11, Table 5; **H1/AS1 5.0**
see also Water heaters
 drain pipes..... **G12/AS1 6.11.3 c)**
 open vented..... **G12/AS1 6.3.2, Figures 6 and 7**
 free outlet type..... **G12/AS1 6.1.2, 6.4.2**
 mains pressure supply..... **G12/AS1 6.2.1, Figure 8, Table 5**
 tank supply..... **G12/AS1 6.1.1, Figure 6, Table 5**
 safe trays..... **G12/AS1 5.2.3, 6.11.3**
 seismic restraint..... **G12/AS1 6.11.5, Figure 4**
 unvented
see Storage water heaters, valve vented
 valve vented..... **G12/AS1 6.3 to 6.7, Figure 8**
- Storage water tanks
see Tanks
- Strainers (filters)..... **G12/AS1 6.2.3**
- Structural stability
see Fire resistance ratings

Structure	B1
building instability.....	NZBC/B1.1
collapse.....	NZBC/B1.2
damage.....	NZBC/B1.2
deflections.....	NZBC/B1.2
demolition.....	NZBC/B1.3.6
design	
concrete.....	B1/VM1 3.0
drains	
see Drains	
foundations	
see Foundations	
loadings.....	B1/VM1 2.0
earthquake.....	B1/AS3 1.9, Table 2
limit state.....	B1/VM1 2.2.4, 7.1
masonry.....	B1/VM1 4.0, B1/AS1 2.0, B1/AS3 1.3.3
siteworks.....	B1/VM1 10.0
steel.....	B1/VM1 5.0
strength reduction factor.....	B1/VM4 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4
timber.....	B1/VM1 6.0, B1/AS1 3.0
see also Timber barriers	
windows	
see Windows	
failure.....	NZBC/B1.1
limit states	
serviceability limit state.....	NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.5
ultimate limit state.....	NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.5
loads.....	NZBC/B1.2, B1.3.3
creep.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
cyclic loads.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
differential movement.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
dynamic loads.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
earth pressure.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
earthquake.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
seismic resistance of building services.....	B1/VM1 14.0
explosion.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
liquid.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
shrinkage.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
snow.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
wind.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
sitework.....	NZBC/B1.3.6, B1.3.7
stability.....	NZBC/B1.3.6, B2.3.1; D1/AS1 1.6
tanks.....	G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4
seismic restraint.....	G14/VM1 2.3.2
temporary support.....	NZBC/B1.3.5
vibrations.....	NZBC/B1.2
Stucco.....	B1/AS1 5.0, E2/AS1 9.3
bottom of stucco.....	E2/AS1 9.3.8, Figure 75
finishes.....	E2/AS1 9.3.7
installation.....	E2/AS1 9.3.4
general.....	E2/AS1 9.3.4.1
movement control joints.....	E2/AS1 9.3.4.2
limitations.....	E2/AS1 9.3.1, Figure 74
non-rigid plaster backings.....	E2/AS1 9.3.5
installation of wall underlays.....	E2/AS1 9.3.5.1, Table 23
rigid plaster backings.....	E2/AS1 9.3.6
fibre cement sheet backing.....	E2/AS1 9.3.6.2
plywood backing.....	E2/AS1 9.3.6.1
parapets and enclosed balustrades.....	E2/AS1 9.3.9
structure.....	E2/AS1 9.3.2
stucco cladding system.....	E2/AS1 9.3.3, Tables 23 and 24, Figure 74
windows and doors.....	E2/AS1 9.3.10, Figure 76
Subsidence.....	B1/VM4 A1.2.1 (a)

Suites
 see Firecells

Surface finishes *see* Control of internal fire and smoke spread

Surface Water **E1**
 see also Run-off, drains

 2% probability storm
 {50 year return period} **NZBC/E1.3.1**

 10% probability storm
 {10 year return period} **NZBC/E1.3.2**
 drainage systems **NZBC/E1.3.3**

Swimming pools
 see **Safety from Falling**

T

Tanks

- industrial liquid waste..... **G14/VM1** 1.4.1 b), 1.4.2, 3.0
- seismic restraint **G14/VM1** 3.2.1
- water tanks..... **G12/AS1** 5.2, 6.2.1
- access..... **G12/AS1** 5.2.5, Figure 4
- covers **G12/AS1** 5.2.4
- location **G12/AS1** 5.2.1
- overflow pipes..... **G12/AS1** 5.2.2, Figure 4
- safe trays **G12/AS1** 5.2.3, Figure 4
- seismic restraint **G12/AS1** 5.2.7, Figure 4
- structural support..... **G12/AS1** 5.2.7, Figure 4
- water storage tanks..... **G12/AS1** 5.1

Taverns

see Communal non-residential

Temperature

see **Electricity, Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment, Outbreak of Fire, Piped Services, Solid Waste, Structure, load, Water Supplies**

Temperature control

see **Interior Environment**, interior temperature

- Temperature/pressure relief valves **G12/AS1** 6.4.1, Figure 8, Table 6
- installation **G12/AS1** 6.6.5
- relief valve drains..... **G12/AS1** 6.7, Figures 12 and 13

Test methods **C/AS1** Appendix C, **C/AS2** Appendix C, **C/AS3** Appendix C, **C/AS4** Appendix C, **C/AS5** Appendix C, **C/AS6** Appendix C

- fire doors and smoke control doors **C/AS1** C6.1, **C/AS2** C6.1, **C/AS3** C6.1, **C/AS4** C6.1, **C/AS5** C6.1, **C/AS6** C6.1
- automatic smoke-sensing devices..... **C/AS1**, **C/AS2**, **C/AS3**, **C/AS4** C6.1.6, **C/AS5** C6.1.6, **C/AS6** C6.1.6
- frictional forces..... **C/AS1** C6.1.3, **C/AS2** C6.1.3, **C/AS3** C6.1.3, **C/AS4** C6.1.3, **C/AS5** C6.1.3, **C/AS6** C6.1.3
- self-closing provision..... **C/AS1** C6.1.4, C6.1.5, **C/AS2** C6.1.4, C6.1.5, **C/AS3** C6.1.4, C6.1.5, **C/AS4** C6.1.4, C6.1.5, **C/AS5** C6.1.4, C6.1.5, **C/AS6** C6.1.4, C6.1.5
- smoke control doors..... **C/AS1** C6.1.2, **C/AS2** C6.1.2, **C/AS3** C6.1.2, **C/AS4** C6.1.2, **C/AS5** C6.1.2, **C/AS6** C6.1.2
- fire properties of external wall cladding systems..... **C/AS1** C7.1.1, C7.1.2, C7.1.3, C7.1.4, C7.1.5, **C/AS2** C7.1.1, C7.1.2, C7.1.3, C7.1.4, C7.1.5, **C/AS3** C7.1.1, C7.1.2, C7.1.3, C7.1.4, C7.1.5, **C/AS4** C7.1.1, C7.1.2, C7.1.3, C7.1.4, C7.1.5, **C/AS5** C7.1.1, C7.1.2, C7.1.3, C7.1.4, C7.1.5, **C/AS6** C7.1.1, C7.1.2, C7.1.3, C7.1.4, C7.1.5
- fire resistance..... **C/AS1** C5.1, **C/AS2** C5.1, **C/AS3** C5.1, **C/AS4** C5.1, **C/AS5** C5.1, **C/AS6** C5.1
- flammability of floor coverings..... **C/AS1** C2.1, **C/AS2** C2.1, **C/AS3** C2.1, **C/AS4** C2.1, **C/AS5** C2.1, **C/AS6** C2.1
- flammability of suspended flexible fabrics and membrane structures **C/AS1** C3.1, **C/AS2** C3.1, **C/AS3** C3.1, **C/AS4** C3.1, **C/AS5** C3.1, **C/AS6** C3.1
- general..... **C/AS1** C1.1, **C/AS2** C1.1, **C/AS3** C1.1, **C/AS4** C1.1, **C/AS5** C1.1, **C/AS6** C1.1
- properties of lining materials **C/AS1** C4.1, **C/AS2** C4.1, C4.1, **C/AS3** C4.1, **C/AS4** C4.1, **C/AS5** C4.1, **C/AS6** C4.1
- combustibility test..... **C/AS1** C4.1.1, **C/AS2** C4.1.1, **C/AS3** C4.1.1, **C/AS4** C4.1.1, **C/AS5** C4.1.1, **C/AS6** C4.1.1

Theatres **NZBC/G5.3.5**

see also Communal non-residential

- Thermal break **E3/AS1** 1.1.4 d)
- Thermal resistance (R-value) **E3/AS1** 1.1; **H1/VM1** 1.4, **H1/AS1** 2.1.1, 2.2, 2.3
 alternative solution **E3/AS1** 1.1.5
 materials and installation **E3/AS1** 1.1.3
- Thermostats **G12/AS1** 6.3.1, 6.5.1
- Thresholds **D1/AS1** 1.3.2
- Timber **B2/AS1** 3.2
see also Design, timber, Timber weatherboards
- Timber barriers **B1/AS2** 1.0
see also Barriers and **Safety from Falling**
- Timber weatherboards **E2/AS1** 9.4
 finishes **E2/AS1** 9.4.9
 horizontal weatherboards **E2/AS1** 9.4.1.3, 9.4.4
 external corners **E2/AS1** 9.4.4.4, Figures 77 and 78
 fixings **E2/AS1** 9.4.4.3, Table 24
 horizontal laps **E2/AS1** 9.4.4.1
 internal corners **E2/AS1** 9.4.4.5, Figure 79
 joints **E2/AS1** 9.4.4.2
 installation **E2/AS1** 9.4.3, Table 23
 fixings **E2/AS1** 9.4.3.1, Tables 20 and 24
 limitations **E2/AS1** 9.4.1
 horizontal weatherboards **E2/AS1** 9.4.1.3, Table 3
 vertical weatherboards **E2/AS1** 9.4.1.2, Table 3
 weatherboard profiles **E2/AS1** 9.4.1.1
 materials **E2/AS1** 9.4.2, Table 23
 parapets and enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.4.8
 vertical weatherboards **E2/AS1** 9.4.1.2, 9.4.5
 corners (external and internal) **E2/AS1** 9.4.5.3, Table 7, Figures 79 and 80
 fixings **E2/AS1** 9.4.5.2, Table 24
 laps **E2/AS1** 9.4.5.1
 windows and doors in cavity walls **E2/AS1** 9.4.7, Figures 17C, 85 and 86
 windows and doors in direct fixed weatherboards **E2/AS1** 9.4.6,
 Figures 17D, 81-84
- Time-share accommodation
see Communal residential
- Toilets
see **Personal Hygiene**, WC Pans
- Toxic substances
see **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 6
- Transport terminals
see Commercial buildings
- Travel distance **NZBC/C2.3.1 (d)**, **C2.3.2**, **C3.3.1 (a)**
- Tunnels
see Ancillary buildings
- Turnstiles
see Doors

U

Ultimate limit states

see **Structure**, limit states

Universities

see Communal non-residential

uPVC pipe.....	G13/AS3 1.0
Urinals	E3/AS1 3.3, 3.3.6; G1/AS1 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1; G13/AS1 Table 2
bowl urinals	G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5
continuous wall urinals.....	G1/AS1 2.3.1, Figure 3
discharge system	G1/AS1 2.3.2
flushing systems	G1/AS1 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5
manually operated.....	G1/AS1 2.3.8
stall urinals.....	G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.5
surface finishes	G1/AS1 2.3.4
trough urinals.....	G1/AS1 2.3.1 to 2.3.3
Utensil washing.....	G3/AS1 1.1.1

V

Vacuum relief valves	G12/AS1 Table 6
Vehicles	NZBC/D1.1, D1.2.2, D1.3.1 (d) (e), D1.3.5, G14.3.2 (b); D1/AS1 10.0, G14/VM1 1.8, 2.1.5; G15/AS1 3.0.10
access	G14/VM1 1.8, 2.1.5
car parking areas	D1/AS1 10.1
accessible car parking spaces.....	D1/AS1 10.1, 10.2.1
commercial vehicles.....	D1/AS1 11.0.2
loading spaces.....	D1/AS1 11.0.2
Vent pipes	G12/AS1 6.3.2, 6.8; G13/AS1 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 12, Table 5; G13/AS2 Figures 5 and 6
diameter	G12/AS1 6.8.2, G13/AS1 Table 6
fixture vent pipes	G13/AS1 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11, Tables 5 and 6
gradient	G13/AS1 5.4
height.....	G12/AS1 6.8.2 d)
installation	G12/AS1 6.9.1; G13/AS1 5.5 to 5.7, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11
insulation	G12/AS1 6.8.3
relief vent pipes.....	G13/AS1 5.6, Figure 7
termination	G12/AS1 6.8.2 c); G13/AS1 5.7.3, Figure 12
Ventilation.....	G4; NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); C/AS1 6.9.6; E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.2;
airflow control	NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1 3.0, G4/AS1 1.5.1 b)
air handling systems	G4/AS1 1.3.1 b)
air purity.....	NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/VM1 2.0
bacteria, pathogens and allergens	NZBC/G4.3.2
balconies, bridges and open stairways.....	C/AS1 3.14.7
car park.....	G4/AS1 1.5.4
combined natural and mechanical	G4/AS1 1.4
contaminated air	
discharge systems	G4/AS1 1.5.1 f)
disposal.....	NZBC/G4.3.4
removal.....	NZBC/G4.3.3
drains	G13/AS2 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
extract ventilation.....	G4/AS1 1.5.1 c)
fixed combustion appliances	NZBC/G4.3.5
flues.....	G4/AS1 2.3, 2.4
gas-fuel appliances	G4/AS1 2.0
another solution.....	G4/AS1 3.0
draught diverters	G4/AS1 2.3.2
flue construction.....	G4/AS1 2.3
flue location on dwellings.....	G4/AS1 2.4
mechanical ventilation.....	G4/AS1 2.2
natural ventilation	G4/AS1 2.1
maximum occupancy	NZBC/G4.2
mechanical ventilation systems.....	NZBC/C3.3.7, G4.3.2; G4/AS1 1.5, 2.2
natural.....	G4/AS1 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 2.1
household units and accommodation units with one external wall	G4/AS1 1.3
natural smoke ventilation	
see Fire safety precautions	
number of air changes	NZBC/G4.3.1
outdoor air supply.....	NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/AS1 1.5.1 a) d)
passive stack ventilators	G4/AS1 1.3.7
positive and negative pressure	G4/AS1 1.5.5
prevention of internal moisture	NZBC/E3.3.1
rate	G4/VM1 1.0.1
recirculated air systems	G4/AS1 1.5.1 e)
trickle ventilators	G4/AS1 1.3.9
ventilation rate.....	G4/VM1 1.0

Vermin-proofing	E2/AS1	9.1.8.3
Vibrations		
<i>see</i> Structure		
Visibility in Escape Routes	F6/AS1	
duration	F6/AS1	1.6
documentation	F6/AS1	1.7
equipment	F6/AS1	1.8
illuminance	F6/AS1	1.3
installation	F6/AS1	1.8
location	F6/AS1	1.2
maintenance	F6/AS1	1.8
method of measurement	F6/AS1	1.4
modifications to AS 2293.1: 2005 and AS 2293.3: 2005	F6/AS1	Appendix B
modifications to NZS 6104	F6/AS1	Appendix C
light output	F6/AS1	1.5
scope	F6/AS1	1.1
start-up	F6/AS1	1.5

W

- Walls..... **NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), E2.3.2, E2.3.3, E3.3.4, E3.3.5, G6.3.1;**
- external walls **NZBC/E2.3.2**
 - see also Unprotected areas
 - floor/wall junctions..... **G6/AS1** 1.0.3, Figure 5
 - internal/external wall junctions **G6/AS1** 1.0.3, Figure 4
 - wall assemblies..... **G6/AS1** 1.0.3, Figure 2
- Wall/Roof junctions
see Roof/wall junctions
- Wall claddings **E2/AS1** 3.3, 9.0
- air seals..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.6, Figure 81
 - barriers to airflow **E2/AS1** 9.1.4, Table 23
 - bottom of cladding **E2/AS1** 9.1.3, Tables 7 and 18, Figure 65
 - concrete slabs **E2/AS1** 9.1.3.1, Figure 65
 - concrete ground slabs (except masonry veneer)..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.3.3, Table 18
 - garages and openings to garages **E2/AS1** 9.1.3.4, Tables 18 and 23, Figure 65
 - masonry veneer clearances **E2/AS1** 9.1.3.2, Table 18, Figure 73D
 - timber floor framing..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.3.5, Table 18
- drained cavities **E2/AS1** 9.1.8
- cavity battens **E2/AS1** 9.1.8.4
 - limitations **E2/AS1** 9.1.8.1
 - requirements **E2/AS1** 9.1.8.2, Table 23, Figures 66 and 67
 - vermin-proofing..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.8.3, Figure 66
 - wall framing behind cavities..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.8.5
- general..... **E2/AS1** 9.1
- limitations..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.1, Table 3
 - maintenance **E2/AS1** 9.1.2
 - penetrations **E2/AS1** 9.1.9
 - inter-storey junctions..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.9.4, Figure 70
 - other cavity penetrations..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.9.2
 - penetrations through cavities..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.9.1
 - pipes and service penetrations **E2/AS1** 9.1.9.3, Figures 68 and 69
- wall underlay **E2/AS1** 9.1.7, Tables 3 and 23
- wall underlays to wall openings **E2/AS1** 9.1.5, Figures 72A and 72B
- Wall claddings (continued)
- windows and doors..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10
 - attachments **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.8
 - closed cell foam tape **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.7
 - head flashings..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.4, Table 7, Figures 66 and 71
 - scope **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.1
 - treatment of opening..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.2, Figures 72A, 72B, 116, Tables 7 and 20
 - window and door heads..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.3, Figure 71
 - window and door jambs..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.6
 - window sills..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.5, Figures 17C and 17D
- Warehouses
see Industrial buildings
- Warning Systems** **F7**
- see also Alarm systems
 - combined fire detection and warning system **NZBC/F7.3**
- Wash-down areas **G3/AS1** 2.3
- Washing machines
see Sanitary appliances
- Waste chutes
see **Solid Waste**

- Waste disposal units..... **NZBC/G15.3.3; G13/AS1** Figure 2, Table 2
- Waste pipes
see Discharge pipes, Pipes
- Water
see **External Moisture, Foul Water, Internal Moisture, Surface Water, Water Supplies**
- Water heaters **G12/AS1** 6.1, Table 5
installation **G12/AS1** 6.11
instantaneous water heaters **G12/AS1** 6.1.1,
solar water heaters..... **G12/AS1** 6.1.1, 6.15, Table 5
storage water heaters
see Storage water heaters
wet back water heaters..... **G12/AS1** 6.13, Figure 15
- Water main..... **G12/AS1** 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1
- Water seals **G1/AS1** 2.1.1 c), Figure 2; **G13/AS1** 1.0.3, 3.2.1, Figure 1, Table 1,
G13/AS2 3.3.1 d)
- Water splash **E3/AS1** 3.0
basins **E3/AS1** 3.2.2, Figure 3
baths..... **E3/AS1** 3.2.2, Figure 3
lining materials **E3/AS1** 3.1, Figure 1
joints in linings..... **E3/AS1** 3.2, Figure 2
showers..... **E3/AS1** 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5
sinks **E3/AS1** 3.2.2, Figure 3
tubs..... **E3/AS1** 3.2.2, Figure 3
urinals **E3/AS1** 3.3.6
- Water Supplies** **G12**
access for maintenance **NZBC/G12.3.6 (d)**
backflow prevention devices **NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)**
cold **G3/AS1** 1.1.4
drinking water..... **NZBC/G12.2**
energy efficiency..... **NZBC/H1.2, H1.3.4**
hot..... **G3/AS1** 1.1.4, Figure 1; **G12/AS1** 6.0
mixing devices
tempering valves **G12/AS1** 6.14.2, Figure 16
pipe sizes **G12/AS1** 6.12, Table 4
safe water temperatures **G12/AS1** 6.14
isolation of system..... **NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)**
leakage **NZBC/G12.3.6 (c)**
laundries **G2/AS1** 1.1.1, 1.1.2
mains **G12/AS1** 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1
non-potable water **NZBC/G12.3.2; G12/AS1** 4.1
outlet identification..... **G12/AS1** 4.2.1, Figure 3
people with disabilities..... **NZBC/G12.3.9**
potable water **NZBC/G12.3.1, G12.3.6 (a), G14.3.2 (c);**
G12/AS1 3.0; **G14/VM1** 1.6.3
pressure vessels **NZBC/G12.1 (b), G12.3.7 (a)**
sanitary appliances..... **NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)**
sanitary fixtures..... **NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.4 G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)**
solid waste areas..... **G15/AS1** 3.0.7, 4.0.3
water storage vessels **NZBC/G12.3.7, G12.3.8**
see also Storage water heaters
water temperature **NZBC/G12.1 (b) (c), G12.3.3 to G12.3.5, G12.3.7 (b), G12.3.8**

- Water supply systems **G12/VM1** 1.0, **G12/AS1** 5.0
 installation **G12/AS1** 5.2
 anchor points **G12/AS1** 7.1.2
 electrochemical compatibility **G12/AS1** 7.1.1
 in concrete or masonry **G12/AS1** 7.3.3
 pipe supports **G12/AS1** 7.1
 spacing **G12/AS1** 7.1.3, Table 7
 pipes below ground **G12/AS1** 7.3.2
 protection from damage **G12/AS1** 7.3
 protection from freezing **G12/AS1** 7.2
 protection from frosts **G12/AS1** 3.6.3
 maintenance facilities **G12/AS1** 5.2
 materials **G12/AS1** 2.0, Table 1
 pressure limitations **G12/AS1** 2.2.2 a)
 temperature limitations **G12/AS1** 2.2.2 a)
 pipe size **G12/AS1** 5.3, Table 4
 flow rates **G12/AS1** 5.3.1, Table 3
 watertightness **G12/AS1** 7.5
- Water tanks
 see Tanks
- Water traps **G13/AS1** 3.0, Figure 1
 dimensions **G13/AS1** 3.2.1, Figure 1
 location **G13/AS1** 3.3
 multiple outlets **G13/AS1** 3.3.2, Figure 2
- WC pans **G1/AS1** 2.1, 3.1.1, 4.2.2, Figures 4 to 6, Table 1;
G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figures 1 and 6, Tables 2 and 5,
 cisterns **G1/AS1** 2.2.2
 cubicles **G1/AS1** 6.2, Figure 11
 flushing systems **G1/AS1** 2.1.1 f), 2.2, 4.2.6
 surface finish **G1/AS1** 2.1.1 a)
 water seals **G1/AS1** 2.1.1 c), Figure 2
- Weather stops **D1/AS1** 1.3.2
- Weatherboards
 see Timber weatherboards and fibre cement weatherboards
- Weathertightness **E2/AS1** 2.1, 8.1.1
- Weathertightness risk factors **E2/AS1** 3.0
 establishing the risk **E2/AS1** 3.1, Figure 1
 building envelope risk scores Table 2
 examples **E2/AS1** 3.4, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.3, Tables 4-6, Figures 2-4
 definitions of risk **E2/AS1** 3.1.1, Table 1
 risk score **E2/AS1** 3.1.2, Table 2
- wall claddings **E2/AS1** 3.3, Table 3
- Whare Runanga
 see Communal non-residential, assembly service
- Wheelchairs **D1/AS1** 7.0.1
 see also People with disabilities, Accessible routes
 spaces for wheelchairs **D1/AS1** 8.1, 8.1.2, Figure 30
 wheelchair access **NZBC/D1.3.4 (b) (d) (e)**
- Wind
 see **Structure**, loads

- Windows and doors..... **B1/VM1** 12.0; **E2/AS1** 9.1.10, 9.2.10, 9.3.10,
9.5.4, 9.6.8.6, 9.6.9.7, 9.7.6, 9.8.8, 9.9.9; **E3/AS1** 1.3.1;
G7/AS1 1.0.1 to 1.0.3, 2.0.1,
Figures 1 and 2; **G15/AS1** 3.0.4, 3.0.6
- see also* **Natural Light**
- closed cell foam tape **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.7
- fire windows
see Glazing
- glazing..... **B1/AS1** 7.0
- head flashings **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.4, Table 7, Figures 66 and 71
- scope **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.1
- treatment of opening..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.2, Figures 72A, 72B and 116, Tables 7 and 20
- vertical profile: windows and doors..... **E2/AS1** 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100
- window and door heads..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.3, Figure 71
- windows and doors in cavity walls **E2/AS1** 9.4.7, 9.5.4.2, 9.8.8.2, 9.9.9,
Figures 85, 86, 91, 116 and 128
- windows and doors in direct fixed weatherboards **E2/AS1** 9.4.6, 9.5.4.1, 9.8.8.1,
9.9.9, Figures 81-84,
90, 115 and 127
- window and door jambs..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.6, Table 7
- window and door sills **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.5, Figures 17C and 17D
- Work camps **NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d);**
G2/AS1 Table 1; **G3/AS1** 1.0.1
- see also* Communal residential, community service